

---

## GENERAL NOTICE

---

### **NOTICE 393 OF 2009**

#### **NATIONAL TREASURY**

#### **LOCAL GOVERNMENT: MUNICIPAL FINANCE MANAGEMENT ACT, 2003 MUNICIPAL BUDGET AND REPORTING REGULATIONS**

I, Trevor A. Manuel, Minister of Finance, with the concurrence of the Minister for Provincial and Local Government, hereby publish regulations made in terms of section 168 of the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003, (Act No. 56 of 2003) as set out in the Schedule.

**T.A. MANUEL, MP  
MINISTER OF FINANCE**

**SCHEDULE**

**NATIONAL TREASURY**

**LOCAL GOVERNMENT: MUNICIPAL FINANCE MANAGEMENT ACT  
MUNICIPAL BUDGET AND REPORTING REGULATIONS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**CHAPTER 1**

**INTERPRETATION, OBJECT AND APPLICATION OF THESE REGULATIONS**

1. Definitions
2. Object of these Regulations
3. Application of these Regulations

**CHAPTER 2**

**BUDGET AND BUDGET RELATED MATTERS OF MUNICIPALITIES**

***Part 1: General provisions***

4. Budget steering committee
5. Quality certification
6. Consistency in bases of measurement and accounting policies

***Part 2: Budget-related policies of municipalities***

7. Preparing and amending budget-related policies
8. Funding and reserves policies

***Part 3: Annual budgets of municipalities***

9. Format of annual budgets
10. Funding of expenditure
11. Funding of capital expenditure

12. Funds created in terms of section 12 of the Act
13. Approval of capital projects
14. Tabling of annual budgets in municipal councils
15. Publication and submission of annual budgets for consultation
16. Consideration of annual budgets by municipal councils
17. Approval of annual budgets
18. Publication of approved annual budgets
19. Publication of approved service delivery and budget implementation plan
20. Submission of approved annual budget and other documents

***Part 4: Adjustments budgets of municipalities***

21. Formats of adjustments budgets
22. Funding of adjustments budgets
23. Timeframes for tabling adjustments budgets
24. Submission of tabled adjustments budgets
25. Approval of adjustments budgets
26. Publication of approved adjustments budget
27. Submission of approved adjustments budget and other documents

***Part 5: In-year reports of municipalities***

28. Format of monthly budget statements
29. Tabling of monthly statements
30. Publication of monthly budget statements
31. Quarterly reports on implementation of budget
32. Publication of quarterly reports on implementation of budget
33. Format of mid-year budget and performance assessment
34. Publication of mid-year budget and performance assessments
35. Submission of mid-year budget and performance assessments

**CHAPTER 3**

**BUDGET AND BUDGET RELATED MATTERS OF MUNICIPAL ENTITIES**

***Part 1: General provisions***

36. Quality certification

37. Consistency in bases of measurement and accounting policies

***Part 2: Funding and reserves policy of municipal entities***

38. Funding and reserves policies

***Part 3: Annual budgets of municipal entities***

39. Format of annual budget  
40. Funding of expenditure  
41. Funding of capital expenditure  
42. Parent municipalities to submit information relating to approval of capital projects by municipal entities  
  
43. Submission of annual budgets to parent municipality  
44. Approval of annual budget  
45. Submission of approved annual budgets for tabling  
46. Publication of approved annual budgets  
47. Submission of approved annual budgets

***Part 4: Adjustments budgets of municipal entities***

48. Formats of adjustments budgets  
49. Framework for adjustments budgets  
50. Approval of adjustments budgets  
51. Submission of approved adjustments budgets  
52. Publication of approved adjustments budgets  
53. Submission of approved adjustments budgets

***Part 5: In-year reports of municipal entities***

54. Formats of monthly budget statements  
55. Submission of monthly budget statements  
56. Format of mid-year budget and performance assessment  
57. Tabling of mid-year budget and performance assessments  
58. Publication of mid-year budget and performance assessments  
59. Submission of mid-year budget and performance assessments

**CHAPTER 4****NON-COMPLIANCE WITH TIME PROVISIONS*****Part 1: Impending non-compliance by municipalities with time lines and deadlines concerning annual budgets***

- 60. Applications for extension of time limits
- 61. Framework for consideration of applications
- 62. Possible non-compliance with section 16(1) of the Act

***Part 2: Actual non-compliance by municipalities with time provisions concerning annual budgets and adjustments budgets***

- 63. Notification of actual non-compliance with time provisions
- 64. Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions affecting annual budgets and adjustments budgets

***Part 3: Non-compliance by municipalities with time provisions concerning in-year reports***

- 65. Notification of non-compliance with time provisions concerning in-year reports
- 66. Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions concerning in-year reports

***Part 4: Non-compliance by municipal entities with time provisions***

- 67. Monitoring compliance with time provisions
- 68. Notifications of non-compliance with time provisions
- 69. Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions
- 70. Submission of information to National Treasury

**CHAPTER 5****FRAMEWORK FOR UNFORESEEN AND UNAVOIDABLE EXPENDITURE*****Part 1: Unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure by municipalities***

- 71. Authorisation of unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure
- 72. Monetary limits on unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure

**Part 2: Unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure by municipal entities**

73. Approval of unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure

**CHAPTER 6****UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR OR FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE****Part 1: Unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure by municipalities**

74. Issues to be considered by council committee

**Part 2: Irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure by municipal entities**

75. Recovery of irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure  
76. Board may not delegate authority to certify expenditure as irrecoverable  
77. Short title and commencement

**SCHEDULES**

- Schedule A – Annual Budget and Supporting Documentation of Municipalities  
Schedule B – Adjustments Budget and Supporting Documentation of Municipalities  
Schedule C – In-year Reports of Municipalities  
Schedule D – Annual Budget and Supporting Documentation of Municipal Entities  
Schedule E – Adjustments Budget and Supporting Documentation of Municipal Entities  
Schedule F – In-year Reports of Municipal Entities  
Schedule G – Extensions and Non-compliance with Time Provisions

## CHAPTER 1

### INTERPRETATION, OBJECT AND APPLICATION OF THESE REGULATIONS

#### Definitions

1. (1) In these Regulations, a word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act has the same meaning as in the Act, and unless the context indicates otherwise –

**“Act”** means the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No. 56 of 2003);

**“in-year reports”**, in relation to –

- (a) a municipality, means –
  - (i) a monthly budget statement of the municipality contemplated in section 71(1) of the Act;
  - (ii) a quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and financial state of affairs of the municipality contemplated in section 52(d) of the Act; or
  - (iii) a mid-year budget and performance assessment of the municipality contemplated in section 72 of the Act; and
- (b) a municipal entity, means –
  - (i) a monthly budget statement of the entity contemplated in section 87(11) of the Act; or
  - (ii) a mid-year budget and performance assessment of the entity contemplated in section 88 of the Act;

**“own revenue”**, in relation to regulation 72 means total revenue as reflected in the municipality's financial performance budget by standard classification less national and provincial conditional transfers.

**“quality certificate”**, in relation to –

- (a) a municipality, means a certificate issued and signed by the municipal manager of the municipality confirming the accuracy and reliability of the contents of a document prepared or issued by the municipality; or
- (b) a municipal entity, means a certificate issued and signed by the chief executive officer of the entity confirming the accuracy and reliability of the contents of a document prepared or issued by the entity;

**"Schedule"** means a Schedule to these Regulations;

**"supporting documentation"**, in relation to –

- (a) an annual budget of a municipality, means documentation referred to in section 17(3) of the Act;
- (b) an annual budget of a municipal entity, means documentation that informs the annual budget;
- (c) an adjustments budget of a municipality, means documentation referred to in section 28(5)(d) of the Act; or
- (d) an adjustments budget of a municipal entity, means documentation that informs the adjustments budget.

**"total revenue"**, in relation to regulations 13(2) means total revenue as reflected in the municipality's financial performance budget by standard classification.

(2) In these Regulations –

- (a) a word or expression which is a derivative or other grammatical form of a word or expression defined in subregulation (1), has a corresponding meaning unless the context indicates that another meaning is intended; and
- (b) a footnote may be taken into account in determining the meaning of a provision of these Regulations, but only as an opinion on the information it conveys.

### **Object of these Regulations**

2. The object of these Regulations is to secure sound and sustainable management of the budgeting and reporting practices of municipalities and



municipal entities by establishing uniform norms and standards and other requirements for ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in the budgeting and reporting processes of those institutions and other relevant matters as required by the Act.

### **Application of these Regulations**

3. These Regulations apply to all municipalities and municipal entities.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **BUDGETS AND BUDGET RELATED MATTERS OF MUNICIPALITIES**

#### ***Part 1: General provisions***

#### **Budget steering committee**

4. (1) The mayor of a municipality must establish a budget steering committee to provide technical assistance to the mayor in discharging the responsibilities set out in section 53 of the Act.

(2) The steering committee must consist of at least the following persons:

- (a) the councillor responsible for financial matters;
- (b) the municipal manager;
- (c) the chief financial officer;
- (d) the senior managers responsible for at least the three largest votes in the municipality;
- (e) the manager responsible for budgeting;
- (f) the manager responsible for planning; and
- (g) any technical experts on infrastructure.

#### **Quality certification**

5. Whenever an annual budget and supporting documentation, an adjustments budget and supporting documentation or an in-year report of a municipality is submitted to the mayor, tabled in the municipal council, made public or submitted to

another organ of state, it must be accompanied by a quality certificate complying with Schedule A, B or C, as the case may be, and signed by the municipal manager.

#### **Consistency in bases of measurement and accounting policies**

6. The municipal manager of a municipality must take all reasonable steps to ensure that –

- (a) the basis of measurement and accounting policies underpinning the municipality's annual financial statements are the same as those used in the preparation of the municipality's annual budget and supporting documentation, its adjustments budgets and supporting documentation, and its in-year reports; and
- (b) any differences or changes between financial years are explicitly noted.

### ***Part 2: Budget-related policies of municipalities***

#### **Preparing and amending budget-related policies**

7. (1) The municipal manager of a municipality must prepare, or take all reasonable steps to ensure the preparation of the budget-related policies<sup>1</sup> of the

---

<sup>1</sup> As defined in section 1 of the Act. Policies that affect or are affected by the annual budget of a municipality include –

- (a) the tariffs policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 74 of the Municipal Systems Act;
- (b) the rates policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 3 of the Municipal Property Rates Act;
- (c) the credit control and debt collection policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 96 of the Municipal Systems Act;
- (d) the cash management and investment policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 13(2) of the Act;
- (e) a borrowing policy which must comply with Chapter 6 of the Act;
- (f) a funding and reserves policy;
- (g) a policy related to the long-term financial plan;
- (h) the supply chain management policy which the municipality is required to adopt in terms of section 111 of the Act;
- (i) any policies dealing with the management and disposal of assets;
- (j) any policies dealing with infrastructure investment and capital projects, including –

municipality, or any necessary amendments to such policies, in accordance with the legislation applicable to those policies for tabling in the municipal council by the applicable deadline specified by the mayor in terms of section 21(1)(b) of the Act.

#### **Funding and reserves policies**

8. (1) Each municipality must have a funding and reserves policy which must set out the assumptions and methodology for estimating –

- (a) projected billings, collections and all direct revenues;
- (b) the provision for revenue that will not be collected;
- (c) the funds the municipality can expect to receive from investments;
- (d) the dividends the municipality can expect to receive from municipal entities;
- (e) the proceeds the municipality can expect to receive from the transfer or disposal of assets;
- (f) the municipality's borrowing requirements; and
- (g) the funds to be set aside in reserves.

- 
- (i) the policy governing the planning and approval of capital projects; and
  - (ii) the policy on developer contributions for property developments;
  - (k) the indigents policy of the municipality;
  - (l) any policies related to the provision of free basic services;
  - (m) any policies related to budget implementation and monitoring including –
    - (i) a policy dealing with the shifting of funds within votes;
    - (ii) a policy dealing with the introduction of adjustments budgets;
    - (iii) policies dealing with unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure; and
    - (iv) policies dealing with management and oversight;
  - (n) any policies related to managing electricity and water including –
    - (i) a policy related to the management of losses; and
    - (ii) a policy to promote conservation and efficiency;
  - (o) any policies relating to personnel including policies on overtime, vacancies and temporary staff;
  - (p) any policies dealing with municipal entities, including –
    - (i) the service delivery agreement; and
    - (ii) the dividend preference of the municipality; and
  - (q) any other budget-related or financial management policies of the municipality.

(2) When developing or amending the funding and reserves policy of the municipality, the municipal manager must ensure that the policy –

- (a) is consistent with the most recent actual billings and collection trends;
- (b) takes into account the credit rating of the municipality, if available, the financial position of the municipality, the cost of borrowing and the capacity to repay debt;
- (c) takes into account all the budget-related policies of the municipality, particularly recent amendments to any of those policies;
- (d) takes account of any statutory requirements to set aside funds in reserves; and
- (e) takes account of the transfer and disposal of assets.

### ***Part 3: Annual budgets of municipalities***

#### **Format of annual budgets**

9. The annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipality must be in the format specified in Schedule A and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>2</sup>

#### **Funding of expenditure<sup>3</sup>**

10. (1) The funding of an annual budget must –
- (a) be estimated in accordance with the assumptions and methodologies set out in the funding and reserves policy of the municipality referred to in regulation 8; and
  - (b) be consistent with the trends, current and past, of actual funding collected or received.

---

<sup>2</sup> See the MFMA Budget Formats Guide published on the National Treasury's website.

<sup>3</sup> This regulation is intended to give effect to section 18 of the Act and must consequently be read in the context of that section.

(2) Realistically anticipated revenues to be received from national or provincial government, national or provincial public entities, other municipalities, municipal entities, donors or any other source may be included in an annual budget only if there is acceptable documentation that guarantees the funds. Acceptable documentation is constituted by –

- (a) in the case of allocations or transfers from national or provincial government, the latest available –
  - (i) gazetted allocations or transfers to the municipality following the approval of the current year's Division of Revenue Act, national annual budget, national adjustments budget, relevant provincial annual budget or provincial adjustments budget;
  - (ii) proposed allocations or transfers to the municipality contained in the tabled national and provincial budgets as detailed in accordance with section 36(2) of the Act;
  - (iii) written notifications from the relevant treasury of proposed allocations or transfers subsequent to the previous year's national or provincial approved annual budgets and latest adjustment budgets, but prior to the current year's budgets being tabled; or
  - (iv) the previous years' allocations or transfers in the national and provincial annual budgets and adjustments budgets as gazetted;
- (b) in the case of transfers from other municipalities, the latest available –
  - (i) transfers in the approved annual budget or any subsequent approved adjustments budget of the transferring municipality;
  - (ii) proposed transfers contained in the tabled annual budget of the relevant transferring municipality;
  - (iii) written notification of proposed transfers from transferring municipalities communicated to the municipality in terms of section 37(2) of the Act; or
  - (iv) the previous year's transfers in the approved annual budget or any adjustments budget of the transferring municipality; and
- (c) in the case of agency payments, public contributions, donations, donor grants or any other grants, subsidies or contributions, the relevant service level

agreement, contract or other legally binding document which guarantees the funding.

(3) Estimated provision for revenue from rates, taxes, levies or other charges that will not be collected must be budgeted for separately and reflected on the expenditure side of the municipality's annual budget and not netted out from budgeted revenue.

(4) The cash flow budget required in terms of Schedule A must reflect all funds realistically forecast to be collected, including arrears.

(5) The municipal manager in signing the quality certificate in Schedule A, certifies that all ratepayers and consumers are accounted for in the annual budget calculations and that billing systems including property records and metering information are up to date and consistent with the revenue projections in the annual budget.

(6) To determine whether an annual budget is funded in accordance with section 18 of the Act, a simultaneous analysis is required of the financial performance, financial position, cash flow, and capital expenditure budgets together with any requirements for working capital and cash investments held for statutory or contractual purposes.<sup>4</sup>

#### **Funding of capital expenditure**

11. (1) An annual budget must show total capital expenditure and the different sources of funding<sup>5</sup>.

(2) All sources of funding shown in terms of subregulation (1) must be available, and must not have been committed for other purposes.

---

<sup>4</sup> See supporting table SA10 and guidance given in the MFMA Funding Compliance Guideline.

<sup>5</sup> See Table A5 Budgeted Capital Expenditure by Vote, Standard classification & Funding in Schedule A.

(3) The total budgeted capital funding by source must equal the total budgeted capital expenditure.

**Funds created in terms of section 12 of the Act**

12. (1) Funds created in terms of section 12 of the Act must be fully cash backed.

(2) A municipality may make expenditures or donations in support of the objectives for which funds created in terms of section 12 of the Act were established if approved in an annual budget or adjustments budget.

(3) No municipal funds may be paid into a fund created in terms of section 12 of the Act.

**Approval of capital projects<sup>6</sup>**

13. (1) Within ten working days after the municipal council has given individual approval for a capital project in terms of section 19(1)(b) of the Act, the municipal manager must in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act make public –

- (a) the municipal council resolution approving the capital project; and
- (b) details of the nature, location and total projected cost of the approved capital project.

(2) The following capital projects may be approved by a council either individually or as part of a consolidated capital programme as contemplated in section 19(3) of the Act:

---

<sup>6</sup> Section 19 of the MFMA regulates budgetary matters in relation to capital projects. In terms of section 19(1)(b) a municipality may not spend any money on a capital project unless the council has approved the specific project including the total cost. Section 19(3), however, provides that capital projects below a prescribed value may be approved either individually or as part of a consolidated capital programme.

- (a) capital projects of which the total projected cost is below 5% of the municipality's revenue, in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget not exceeding R250 million;
- (b) capital projects of which the total projected cost is below 8% of the municipality's revenue, in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget greater than R250 million but not exceeding R500 million; and
- (c) capital projects of which the total projected cost is below R50 million, in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget greater than R500 million.<sup>7</sup>

(3) Subregulation (1) does not apply to capital projects whose total projected cost when the annual budget is approved is below the values set out in subregulation (2).

(4) Expenditure needed for capital projects below the values set out in subregulation (2) may be included in the annual budget before the project is approved in terms of section 19(3) of the Act.

#### **Tabling of annual budgets in municipal councils<sup>8</sup>**

14. (1) An annual budget and supporting documentation tabled in a municipal council in terms of sections 16(2) and 17(3) of the Act must –

- (a) be in the format in which it will eventually be approved by the council; and
- (b) be credible and realistic such that it is capable of being approved and implemented as tabled.

(2) When complying with section 68 of the Act, the municipal manager must submit the draft municipal service delivery and budget implementation plan to

---

<sup>7</sup> Capital projects of which the total projected cost is above these values must be approved individually by the council in terms of section 19(1)(b) of the Act.

<sup>8</sup> Tabling of an annual budget and supporting documentation in the council is dealt with in sections 16(2) and 17(3) of the Act. The purpose of this regulation is to prescribe certain matters incidental to the tabling of the annual budget.



the mayor together with the annual budget to be considered by the mayor for tabling in terms of section 16(2) of the Act.

(3) For effective planning and implementation of the annual budget, the draft municipal service delivery and budget implementation plan may form part of the budget documentation and be tabled in the municipal council if so recommended by the budget steering committee.

**Publication and submission of annual budgets for consultation**

15. (1) When making public the annual budget and supporting documentation in terms of section 22(a) of the Act, read with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act, the municipal manager must also make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate the budget consultation process, including –

- (a) summaries of the annual budget and supporting documentation in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

(2) All information contemplated in subregulation (1) must cover:

- (a) the relevant financial and service delivery implications of the annual budget; and
- (b) at least the previous year's actual outcome, the current year's forecast outcome, the budget year, and the following two years.

(3) When submitting the annual budget to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury in terms of section 22(b)(i) of the Act, the municipal manager must also submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form –

- (a) the supporting documentation as tabled in the municipal council;
- (b) the draft service delivery and budget implementation plan; and
- (c) any other information as may be required by the National Treasury.

(4) The municipal manager must send copies of the annual budget and supporting documentation as tabled in the municipal council, in both printed and electronic form to –

- (a) any other municipality affected by the annual budget within ten working days of the annual budget being tabled in the municipal council; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

**Consideration of annual budgets by municipal councils<sup>9</sup>**

16. (1) At least 30 days before the start of the budget year the mayor must for purposes of section 23 of the Act table the following documents in the municipal council –

- (a) a report summarising the local community's views on the annual budget;
- (b) any comments on the annual budget received from the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury;
- (c) any comments on the annual budget received from any other organ of state, including any affected municipality; and
- (d) any comments on the annual budget received from any other stakeholders.

(2) The municipal manager must assist the mayor in the preparation of the documents referred to in subregulation (1) and section 23(2) of the Act.

**Approval of annual budgets<sup>10</sup>**

17. (1) A municipal council must consider the full implications, financial or otherwise, of the annual budget and supporting documentation before approving the annual budget.

---

<sup>9</sup> Section 23 of the Act prescribes the procedure to be followed by a municipality once the budget has been tabled in the council, published for public comment and submitted to affected organs of state. The purpose of this regulation is to assist the council and the mayor to comply with section 23.

<sup>10</sup> A municipal council must approve an annual budget in accordance with section 24 of the Act. This regulation is intended to facilitate compliance with section 24.

(2) When approving an annual budget, a municipal council must in terms of section 24(2)(c) of the Act, consider and adopt separate resolutions dealing with each of the matters contemplated in that section.<sup>11</sup>

#### **Publication of approved annual budgets**

18. (1) Within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the annual budget of a municipality, the municipal manager must in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act make public the approved annual budget and supporting documentation and the resolutions referred to in section 24(2)(c) of the Act.

(2) The municipal manager must also make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the annual budget, including –

- (a) summaries of the annual budget and supporting documentation in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

(3) All information contemplated in subregulation (2) must cover:

- (a) the relevant financial and service delivery implications of the annual budget; and
- (b) at least the previous year's actual outcome, the current year's forecast outcome, the budget year and the following two years.

#### **Publication of approved service delivery and budget implementation plan**

19. The municipal manager must in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act make public the approved service delivery and budget implementation plan within ten working days after the mayor has approved the plan in terms of section 53(1)(c)(ii) of the Act.

---

<sup>11</sup> For a list of resolutions, see item 4 of Schedule A.

**Submission of approved annual budget and other documents**

20. (1) The municipal manager must comply with section 24(3) of the Act within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the annual budget.

(2) The municipal manager must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form –

- (a) the supporting documentation within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the annual budget;
- (b) the approved service delivery and budget implementation plan within ten working days after the mayor has approved the plan; and
- (c) any other information as may be required by the National Treasury.

(3) The municipal manager must send copies of the approved annual budget and supporting documentation, in both printed and electronic form to –

- (a) any other municipality affected by the annual budget within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the annual budget; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

***Part 4: Adjustments budgets of municipalities*****Formats of adjustments budgets**

21. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation of a municipality must be in the format specified in Schedule B and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>12</sup>

**Funding of adjustments budgets**

22. (1) An adjustments budget of a municipality must be appropriately funded.

---

<sup>12</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

(2) The supporting documentation to accompany an adjustments budget in terms of section 28(5) of the Act must contain an explanation of how the adjustments budget is funded.

#### **Timeframes for tabling of adjustments budgets**

23. (1) An adjustments budget referred to in section 28(2)(b), (d) and (f) of the Act may be tabled in the municipal council at any time after the mid-year budget and performance assessment has been tabled in the council, but not later than 28 February of the current year.

(2) Only one adjustments budget referred to in subregulation (1) may be tabled in the municipal council during a financial year, except when the additional revenues contemplated in section 28(2)(b) of the Act are allocations to a municipality in a national or provincial adjustments budget, in which case subregulation (3) applies.

(3)<sup>13</sup> If a national or provincial adjustments budget allocates or transfers additional revenues to a municipality, the mayor of the municipality must, at the next available council meeting, but within 60 days of the approval of the relevant national or provincial adjustments budget, table an adjustments budget referred to in section 28(2)(b) of the Act in the municipal council to appropriate these additional revenues.

(4) An adjustments budget referred to in section 28(2)(c) of the Act must be tabled in the municipal council at the first available opportunity after the unforeseeable and unavoidable expenditure contemplated in that section was incurred and within the time period set in section 29(3) of the Act.

---

<sup>13</sup> This subregulation is intended to ensure that additional revenues allocated to municipalities by national or provincial governments through an adjustments budget are approved for spending as soon as possible so as to minimise the possibility of underspending. In-year changes in agency payments and other revenues mentioned in subregulation 10(2)(c) may only be brought into a municipality's budget in an adjustments budget contemplated in subregulation 23(1).

(5) An adjustments budget referred to in section 28(2)(e) of the Act may only be tabled after the end of the financial year to which the roll-overs relate, and must be approved by the municipal council by 25 August of the financial year following the financial year to which the roll-overs relate.

(6)<sup>14</sup> An adjustments budget contemplated in section 28(2)(g) of the Act may only authorise unauthorised expenditure as anticipated by section 32(2)(a)(i) of the Act, and must be –

- (a) dealt with as part of the adjustments budget contemplated in subregulation (1); and
- (b) a special adjustments budget tabled in the municipal council when the mayor tables the annual report in terms of section 127(2) of the Act, which may only deal with unauthorised expenditure from the previous financial year which the council is being requested to authorise in terms of section 32(2)(a)(i) of the Act.<sup>15</sup>

#### **Submission of tabled adjustments budgets**

24. (1) The municipal manager must comply with section 28(7) of the Act, read together with section 22(b)(i) of the Act, within ten working days after the mayor has tabled an adjustments budget in the municipal council.

(2) When submitting the tabled adjustments budget to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury in terms of section 28(7) of the Act, read together with section 22(b)(i) of the Act, the municipal manager must submit in both printed and electronic form –

---

<sup>14</sup> Section 28(2)(g) of the Act requires a prescribed framework to regulate what other expenditure may be included in adjustments budgets that is not already covered by section 28(2)(a) to (f) of the Act. This subregulation is intended to provide such a framework.

<sup>15</sup> Any unauthorised expenditure not authorised by council must in terms of section 32(2)(a)(i) of the Act be recovered from the person liable for the expenditure unless it is certified as irrecoverable in terms of section 32(2)(a)(ii) of the Act.

- (a) the supporting documentation referred to in section 28(5) of the Act within ten working days of the adjustments budget being tabled in the municipal council; and
- (b) any other information as may be required by the National Treasury.

(3) The municipal manager must send copies of an adjustments budget and supporting documentation, in both printed and electronic form to –

- (a) any other municipality affected by that adjustments budget within ten working days of the adjustments budget being tabled in the municipal council; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

#### **Approval of adjustments budget<sup>16</sup>**

25. (1) A municipal council must consider the full implications, financial or otherwise, of the adjustments budget and supporting documentation referred to in regulation 21 before approving the adjustments budget.

(2) A municipal council may approve an adjustments budget dealing with matters referred to in section 28(2)(c) of the Act only if the expenditure was recommended by the mayor in accordance with the framework prescribed in Chapter 5 of these Regulations.

(3) When approving an adjustments budget, a municipal council must consider and adopt separate resolutions dealing with each of the matters listed in item 4 of Schedule B.

#### **Publication of approved adjustments budget**

26. (1) Within ten working days after the municipal council has approved an adjustments budget, the municipal manager must in accordance with section 21A of

---

<sup>16</sup> Section 28(1) of the Act provides that a municipality may revise an approved annual budget through an adjustments budget. This regulation is intended to facilitate compliance with section 28(1).

the Municipal Systems Act make public the approved adjustments budget and supporting documentation, as well as the resolutions referred to in regulation 25(3).

(2) When making public an adjustments budget and supporting documentation in terms of subregulation (1), the municipal manager must make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the adjustments budget, including –

- (a) summaries of the adjustments budget and supporting documentation in alternate languages predominant in the community;
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality, if that ward is affected by the adjustments budget; and
- (c) any consequential amendment of the service delivery and budget implementation plan that is necessitated by the adjustments budget.

**Submission of approved adjustments budget and other documents**

27. (1) The municipal manager must comply with section 28(7) of the Act read together with section 24(3) of the Act within ten working days after the municipal council has approved an adjustments budget.

(2) When submitting an adjustments budget to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury in terms of section 28(7) of the Act read together with section 24(3) of the Act, the municipal manager must also submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form –

- (a) the supporting documentation within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the adjustments budget;
- (b) the amended service delivery and budget implementation plan, within ten working days after the council has approved the amended plan in terms of section 54(1)(c) of the Act; and
- (c) any other information as may be required by the National Treasury.

(2) The municipal manager must send copies of an approved adjustments budget and supporting documentation, in both printed and electronic form to –



- (a) any other municipality affected by that adjustments budget within ten working days after the municipal council has approved the adjustments budget; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

### ***Part 5: In-year reports of municipalities***

#### **Format of monthly budget statements**

28. The monthly budget statement of a municipality must be in the format specified in Schedule C and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>17</sup>

#### **Tabling of monthly budget statements**

29. The mayor may table in the municipal council a monthly budget statement submitted to the mayor in terms of section 71(1) of the Act. If the mayor does so, the monthly budget statement must be accompanied by a mayor's report in a format set out in Schedule C.

#### **Publication of monthly budget statements**

30. (1) The monthly budget statement of a municipality must be placed on the municipality's website.<sup>18</sup>

(2) The municipal manager must publish on the municipality's website any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the monthly budget statement, including –

- (a) summaries of monthly budget statements in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

---

<sup>17</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

<sup>18</sup> See also section 75(2) of the Act.

**Quarterly reports on implementation of budget**

31. (1) The mayor's quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and the financial state of affairs of the municipality as required by section 52(d) of the Act must be –

- (a) in the format specified in Schedule C and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act; and
- (b) consistent with the monthly budget statements for September, December, March and June as applicable; and
- (c) submitted to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury within five days of tabling of the report in the council.

**Publication of quarterly reports on implementation of budget**

32. When publishing the quarterly reports on the implementation of the budget in terms of section 75(1)(k) of the Act, the municipal manager must make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and the financial state of affairs of the municipality, including –

- (a) summaries of quarterly report in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

**Format of a mid-year budget and performance assessment**

33. A mid-year budget and performance assessment of a municipality referred to in section 72 of the Act must be in the format specified in Schedule C and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

**Publication of mid-year budget and performance assessments**

34. (1) Within five working days of 25 January each year the municipal manager must make the mid-year budget and performance assessment public by placing it on the municipal website.

(2) The municipal manager must make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the mid-year budget and performance assessment, including –

- (a) summaries in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

**Submission of mid-year budget and performance assessments**

35. The municipal manager must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form –

- (a) the mid-year budget and performance assessment by 25 January of each year; and
- (b) any other information relating to the mid-year budget and performance assessment as may be required by the National Treasury.

**CHAPTER 3****BUDGETS AND BUDGET RELATED MATTERS OF  
MUNICIPAL ENTITIES*****Part 1: General provisions*****Quality certification**

36. Whenever an annual budget and supporting documentation, an adjustments budget and supporting documentation, or an in-year report of a municipal entity is submitted to the entity's board of directors or the parent municipality, tabled in the municipal council, made public or submitted to another organ of state, it must be accompanied by a quality certificate complying with Schedule D, E or F, as the case may be, and signed by the chief executive officer of the entity.

**Consistency in bases of measurement and accounting policies**

37. The chief executive officer of a municipal entity must take all reasonable steps to ensure that –

- (a) the basis of measurement and accounting policies underpinning the entity's annual financial statements are the same as those used in the preparation of the entity's annual budget and supporting documentation, its adjustments budgets and supporting documentation and its in-year reports; and
- (b) that any differences or changes between financial years are explicitly noted.

***Part 2: Funding and reserves policy of municipal entities*****Funding and reserves policies**

38. When funding budgets, a municipal entity must apply the assumptions and methodology in its business plan for estimating –

- (a) projected billings; collections and all direct revenues;
- (b) the provision for revenue that will not be collected;
- (c) the funds that the municipal entity can expect to receive from investments;
- (d) the dividends the municipal entity anticipates paying to the parent municipality;
- (e) the proceeds the municipal entity can expect to receive from the disposal of assets;
- (f) the municipal entity's borrowing requirements; and
- (g) the funds to be set aside in reserves.

### ***Part 3: Annual budgets of municipal entities***

#### **Format of annual budget<sup>20</sup>**

39. The annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity must be in the format specified in Schedule D and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1)(a) of the Act.<sup>21</sup>

#### **Funding of expenditure**

40. (1) Realistically anticipated revenues to be received directly from the entity's parent municipality, other municipalities, other municipal entities, donors or any other source may be included in an annual budget only if there is acceptable documentation that guarantees the funds. Acceptable documentation is constituted by –
- (a) in the case of allocations from the entity's parent municipality or from other municipalities the latest available –
    - (i) allocations in the approved annual budget or any subsequent approved adjustments budget of the relevant municipality;
    - (ii) proposed allocations contained in the tabled annual budget of the relevant municipality;
    - (iii) proposed allocations from transferring municipalities communicated to the municipality in terms of section 37(2) of the Act; or
    - (iv) the previous years' allocations in the approved annual budgets and adjustments budgets of the relevant municipality; and
  - (b) in the case of public contributions, donations, donor grants and any other grants, subsidies or contributions, the relevant contract or other legally binding document which guarantees the funding.

---

<sup>20</sup> Section 87(5)(e) of the Act provides that the annual budget of a municipal entity must comply with the requirements of section 17(1) and (2) of the Act to the extent that such requirements can reasonably be applied to municipal entities. Section 17(1) provides that an annual budget of a municipality must be a schedule in the prescribed format. This regulation gives effect to section 17(1).

<sup>21</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

(2) Estimated provision for revenue from rates, taxes, levies or other charges that will not be collected, must be budgeted for separately and reflected on the expenditure side of the municipal entity's annual budget and not netted out from budgeted revenue.

(3) The cash flow budget required in terms of Schedule D must reflect all funds forecast to be collected, including arrears.

(4) The chief executive officer in signing the quality certificate in Schedule D, certifies that all customers are accounted for in the annual budget calculations and that billing systems including metering information are up to date and consistent with the revenue projections in the annual budget.

(5) To determine whether an annual budget is funded in accordance with section 87(5)(a) of the Act a simultaneous analysis is required of the financial performance, financial position, cash flow, and capital expenditure budgets together with any requirements for working capital and cash investments held for statutory or contractual purposes.

#### **Funding of capital expenditure<sup>22</sup>**

41. (1) An annual budget of a municipal entity must show total capital expenditure and the different sources of funding for that expenditure.

(2) All sources of funding shown in terms of subregulation (1) must be available, and must not have been committed for other purposes.

---

<sup>22</sup> Section 87(5)(e) of the Act provides that the annual budget of a municipal entity must comply with the requirements of section 17(1) and (2) to the extent that such requirements can reasonably be applied to municipal entities. Section 17(2) provides that an annual budget of a municipality must generally be divided into a capital and an operating budget. This regulation is intended to give effect to this provision in the municipal entity context.

(3) The total budgeted capital funding by source must equal the budgeted capital expenditure.

**Parent municipalities to submit to treasuries information on capital projects approved by municipal entities**

42. A parent municipality must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasuries particulars of –

- (a) each public entity's capital budget as approved by the board of directors of the municipal entity; and
- (b) details of all capital projects of which the total projected cost is greater than R5 million as approved by the board of directors of the municipal entity.

**Submission of annual budgets to parent municipality**

43. An annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity submitted by the board of directors of a municipal entity to the parent municipality of the entity in terms of section 87(1) of the Act must –

- (a) be in the format in which it will eventually be approved by the board; and
- (b) be credible and realistic such that it is capable of being approved and implemented as submitted.

**Approval of annual budget**

44. (1) The board of directors of a municipal entity must consider the full implications, financial and otherwise, of an annual budget and supporting documentation as prescribed by regulation 37, taking into account the matters referred to in section 87(4) of the Act, before approving an annual budget.

(2) When approving an annual budget, the board of directors of a municipal entity must consider and adopt separate resolutions dealing with each of the matters listed in item 4 of Schedule D.

**Submission of approved annual budgets for tabling<sup>23</sup>**

45. Immediately after the board of directors of a municipal entity has approved the entity's annual budget in terms of section 87(4) of the Act, the chief executive officer must submit the approved annual budget and supporting documentation to the municipal manager of the parent municipality in both printed and electronic form.

**Publication of approved annual budgets**

46. (1) Within ten working days after the board of directors of a municipal entity has approved the annual budget of the entity in terms of section 87(4) of the Act, the municipal manager of the parent municipality must in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act make public the approved annual budget of the entity.

(2) The municipal manager must also make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of the municipal entity's annual budget, including –

- (a) summaries of the annual budget and supporting documentation of the municipal entity in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

(3) The chief executive officer of a municipal entity must provide to the municipal manager of the parent municipality any additional information contemplated in subregulation (2) as the municipal manager may require.

(4) The information contemplated in subregulation (2) must cover –

- (a) the relevant financial and service delivery implications of the entity's annual budget; and
- (b) at least the previous year's actual outcome, the current year's forecast outcome, the budget year, and the following two years.

---

<sup>23</sup> In terms of section 87((9) of the Act the mayor of the parent municipality of a municipal entity must table in the municipal council the annual budget approved by the board of directors of the municipal entity. This regulation facilitates compliance with this provision.



**Submission of approved annual budgets**

47. (1) When submitting the approved annual budget and supporting documentation of the municipality in terms of regulation 20, the municipal manager must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form, the approved annual budget and supporting documentation of all municipal entities under the municipality's sole or shared control.

(2) The municipal manager must send copies of the approved annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity, in both printed and electronic form to -

- (a) any other municipality affected by that budget within ten working days of receiving the approved budget and supporting documentation from the municipal entity; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

***Part 4: Adjustments budgets of municipal entities*****Formats of adjustments budgets<sup>24</sup>**

48. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity must be in the format specified in Schedule E and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>25</sup>

**Framework for adjustments budgets**

49. An adjustments budget referred to in section 87(6)(d) of the Act may only be used –

---

<sup>24</sup> Section 20(1)(b)(v) of the Act provides that the Minister may prescribe uniform norms and standards concerning the budgets of municipal entities.

<sup>25</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- (a) to authorise the rollover of funds that were unspent at the end of the previous financial year; or
- (b) to correct any errors in the annual budget of the municipal entity.

**Approval of adjustments budgets**

50. Whenever a proposed adjustments budget and supporting documentation is submitted to the board of directors of a municipal entity, the chief executive officer of the entity must submit a copy to the municipal manager of the entity's parent municipality.

**Submission of approved adjustments budgets**

51. Immediately after the board of directors of a municipal entity has approved an adjustments budget, the chief executive officer must submit the approved adjustments budget and supporting documentation to the municipal manager of the parent municipality in both printed and electronic form.

**Publication of approved adjustments budgets**

52. (1) Within ten working days after the board of directors of a municipal entity has approved an adjustments budget of the entity, the municipal manager of the parent municipality must in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act make public the approved adjustments budget of the entity.

(2) The municipal manager must also make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of a municipal entity's adjustments budgets, including –

- (a) summaries of an adjustments budget and supporting documentation of the municipal entity in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (b) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

(3) The chief executive officer of a municipal entity must provide such additional information contemplated in subregulation (2) to the municipal manager of the parent municipality.

**Submission of approved adjustments budgets**

53. (1) Within five working days of the end of each quarter, the municipal manager must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form all approved adjustments budgets and supporting documentation received from municipal entities during that quarter.

(2) The municipal manager must send copies of the approved adjustments budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity, in both printed and electronic form to -

- (a) any other municipality affected by the adjustments budget within ten working days of receiving the approved adjustments budget and supporting documentation from the municipal entity; and
- (b) any other organ of state on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

***Part 5: In-year reports of municipal entities*****Formats of monthly budget statements**

54. A monthly budget statement of a municipal entity must be in the format specified in Schedule F and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>26</sup>

**Submission of monthly budget statements**

55. When submitting a monthly budget statement in terms of section 87(11) of the Act to the municipal manager of the parent municipality of a municipal entity, the chief executive officer of the entity must also submit a copy of the statement no later than seven working days after the end of the month to -

- (a) the chairperson of the board of directors of the entity;
- (b) other municipalities affected by the entity's annual budget; and
- (c) any other organ of state, on receipt of a request from that organ of state.

---

<sup>26</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

**Format of a mid-year budget and performance assessment**

56. A mid-year budget and performance assessment of a municipal entity must be –

- (a) in the format specified in Schedule F and include all the required tables, charts and explanatory information, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act;<sup>27</sup> and
- (b) consistent with the entity's monthly budget statements for December.

**Tabling of mid-year budget and performance assessments**

57. When the mayor of the parent municipality submits the report on the mid-year budget and performance assessment of the municipality in terms of section 54(1)(f) of the Act, the mayor must take all reasonable steps to simultaneously table in the municipal council the reports on the mid-year budget and performance assessments of all municipal entities under the sole or shared control of the municipality.

**Publication of mid-year budget and performance assessments**

58. (1) When making public the mid-year budget and performance assessment of the parent municipality in terms of regulation 34, the municipal manager must make public in accordance with section 21A of the Municipal Systems Act the mid-year budget and performance assessments of all municipal entities.

(2) The municipal manager must also make public any other information that the municipal council considers appropriate to facilitate public awareness of a municipal entity's mid-year budget and performance assessment, including –

- (a) summaries of the mid-year budget and performance assessment of the municipal entity in alternate languages predominant in the community; and
- (a) information relevant to each ward in the municipality.

---

<sup>27</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

(3) The chief executive officer of a municipal entity must provide such additional information contemplated in subregulation (2) to the municipal manager of the parent municipality as the municipal manager may require.

#### **Submission of mid-year budget and performance assessments**

59. When submitting the mid-year budget and performance assessment of the municipality in terms of regulation 35, the municipal manager must submit to the National Treasury and the relevant provincial treasury, in both printed and electronic form, the mid-year budget and performance assessments of all municipal entities of the municipality.

### **CHAPTER 4**

#### **NON-COMPLAINE WITH TIME PROVISIONS**

##### ***Part 1: Impending non-compliance by municipalities with time lines and deadlines concerning annual budgets***

#### **Applications for extension of time limits<sup>28</sup>**

60. (1) An application made in terms of section 27(2) of the Act must –
- (a) be in the format contained in Schedule G;
  - (b) be signed and dated by the mayor;
  - (c) contain information on –
    - (i) the specific time provision in respect of which an extension of a time limit or deadline is being applied for;
    - (ii) the reason why the municipality will not comply with the relevant time provision;
    - (iii) the impact, if any, of the non-compliance on the municipal council's ability to meet the deadline for approving the annual budget of a

---

<sup>28</sup> Section 27(2) of the Act provides that the mayor of a municipality may apply for an extension to a time provision pertaining to the tabling or approval of the annual budget of the municipality. This regulation facilitates the application of section 27(2).

municipality set in section 16(1) of the Act, and any steps to ensure this deadline is met;

- (iv) any implications on the finances, performance, governance and accountability arrangements in the municipality that will be affected by the delay in meeting the time limit or deadline and the measure taken to address such implications;
- (v) the steps the municipality will take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future; and
- (vi) a list of non-compliances with time provisions by the municipality in the previous three financial years.

(2) The mayor must table a copy of any application referred to in subregulation (1) at the first meeting of the municipal council following the submission of the application.

**Framework for consideration of applications** <sup>29</sup>

61. (1) The MEC for finance in a province must promptly consider an application referred to in regulation 60, taking into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the time provision in respect of which an extension of a time limit or deadline is being sought;
- (b) whether the stated reasons for the impending non-compliance with the time provision constitute good cause;
- (c) whether the non-compliance will compromise the municipal council's ability to meet the deadline for approving the annual budget set in section 16(1) of the Act;
- (d) the steps the municipality proposes to take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future;

---

<sup>29</sup> The MEC for finance must exercise the power contained in section 27(2) within a prescribed framework. This regulation sets out the required framework.

- (e) the steps the municipality proposes to take to ensure that municipal council meets the deadline for approving the annual budget of the municipality set in section 16(1) of the Act, if relevant; and
- (f) any views that may be expressed by the National Treasury on the application.

(2) The MEC for finance must obtain the views of the National Treasury before communicating the decision on the application to the municipality.

(3) The MEC for finance may require a mayor who has submitted an application referred to in regulation 60 to furnish additional information necessary for the proper consideration of the application.

- (4) The MEC for finance must refuse an application if –
- (a) the stated reasons for the impending non-compliance with the time provision do not constitute good cause as required in section 27(2) of the Act;
  - (b) the extension of the relevant time limit will compromise the municipal council's ability to meet the deadline set in section 16(1) of the Act;
  - (c) there is an implication on the finances, performance, governance and accountability arrangements in the municipality that will negatively impact on the operations of the municipality; or
  - (d) if non-compliance with the time provision has already occurred on the date the application is received by the office of the MEC of finance.

(5) Within 10 working days of receiving an application referred to in regulation 60, the MEC for finance must, in writing, notify the mayor of the municipality of the decision on the application, either –

- (a) approving the application, confirming the new date for compliance proposed in the application;
- (b) approving the application, but indicating an earlier date for compliance to that proposed in the application, giving reasons for specifying an earlier date; or
- (c) refuse the application, giving reasons for the decision.

(6) The mayor must table the response of the MEC for finance to any application referred to in regulation 60 at the first meeting of the municipal council following the receipt of the response.

**Possible non-compliance with section 16(1) of the Act**

62. If a municipality's ability to comply with the deadline set in section 16(1) of the Act will be compromised by any application for an extension in terms of regulation 60, the MEC for finance must notify the MEC for local government in the province and the Provincial Executive Council in anticipation of an intervention in terms of section 136 of the Act.

***Part 2: Actual non-compliance by municipalities with time provisions  
concerning annual budgets and adjustments budgets***

**Notification of actual non-compliance with time provisions**

63. (1) A notification made in terms of section 27(3) of the Act by the mayor of a municipality to the MEC for finance in a province and the National Treasury, in respect of a time provision concerning an annual budget or an adjustments budget must –

- (a) be in the format contained in Schedule G;
- (b) be signed and dated by the mayor;
- (c) contain information on –
  - (i) the specific time provision in respect of which the municipality is failing to comply;
  - (ii) the specific date by which the municipality will remedy its non-compliance;
  - (iii) the reason why an application in terms of section 27(2) of the Act was not submitted before the non-compliance occurred;
  - (iv) the reason why the municipality did not comply with the relevant time provision;
  - (v) the impact, if any, of the non-compliance on the municipal council's ability to meet the deadline for approving an annual budget of a



municipality set in section 16(1) of the Act, and any steps to ensure this deadline is met;

- (vi) any implications on the finances, performance, governance and accountability arrangements in the municipality that will be affected by the delay in meeting the time limit or deadline and the measure taken to address such implications;
- (vii) the steps the municipality will take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future; and
- (viii) a list of non-compliances with time provisions by the municipality in the previous three financial years.

(2) The mayor must table a copy of any notification referred to in subregulation (1) at the first meeting of the municipal council following the submission of the notification.

**Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions affecting annual budgets and adjustments budgets**

**64.** (1) The MEC for finance in a province must promptly consider notifications referred to in regulation 63 with a view to take appropriate remedial steps, including an intervention in terms of section 136 of the Act.

(2) When considering such notifications the MEC must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the time provision in respect of which the non-compliance occurred;
- (b) the extent of the actual non-compliance;
- (c) the acceptability of the date by which the municipality will remedy its non-compliance, if this is legally possible in terms of the Act;
- (d) whether the non-compliance has compromised or will compromise the municipal council's ability to meet the deadline for approving an annual budget of a municipality set in section 16(1) of the Act;
- (e) the steps the municipality proposes to take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future, and

- (f) the steps the municipality proposes to take to ensure that municipal council meets the deadline for approving an annual budget of a municipality set in section 16(1), if relevant.

(2) The MEC for finance may require a mayor who has submitted a notification referred to in regulation 63 to furnish additional information necessary for the proper consideration of the notification.

***Part 3: Non-compliance by municipalities with time provisions concerning in-year reports***

**Notification of non-compliance with time provisions concerning in-year reports**

65. (1) The municipal manager of a municipality must notify the mayor of the municipality, the MEC for finance of the relevant province and the National Treasury if the municipal manager has failed to comply with a time provision pertaining to any in-year report.

- (2) Such notification must –
  - (a) be in the format contained in Schedule G;
  - (b) be signed and dated by the municipal manager;
  - (c) contain information on –
    - (i) the specific time provision which has not been complied with;
    - (ii) the specific date by which the municipality will remedy the non-compliance;
    - (iii) the reason why the relevant time provision was not complied with;
    - (iv) any implications on the finances, performance, governance and accountability arrangements in the municipality that will be affected by the delay in meeting the time limit or deadline and the measure taken to address such implications;
    - (v) the steps the municipality will take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future; and

- (vi) a list of non-compliance with time provisions by the municipality and its office-bearers in the previous three financial years.

(3) The mayor must table a copy of any notification referred to in subregulation (1) at the first meeting of the municipal council following the receipt of the notification.

**Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions concerning in-year reports**

**66.** (1) The MEC for finance in a province must promptly consider notifications referred to in regulation 65 with a view to take any appropriate steps.

(2) When considering such notifications, the MEC must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the time provision in respect of which the non-compliance occurred;
- (b) the extent of the non-compliance;
- (c) the acceptability of the date by which the municipality will remedy the non-compliance; and
- (d) the steps the municipality proposes to take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future.

(3) The MEC for finance in the province may require a municipal manager who has submitted a notification referred to in regulation 65 to furnish additional information necessary for the proper consideration of the notification.

***Part 4: Non-compliance by municipal entities with time provisions***

**Monitoring compliance with time provisions**

**67.** (1) The mayor of the parent municipality of a municipal entity must put in place systems to monitor whether the entity complies with the time provisions affecting its annual budget, adjustments budgets and in-year reports.

(2) At the first council meeting after the end of each quarter, the mayor of a municipality must report to the council on the extent to which each municipal entity of the municipality is complying with the time provisions affecting its budget, adjustments budget and in-year reports, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>30</sup>

**Notifications of non-compliance with time provisions**

**68.** (1) The chief executive officer of a municipal entity must notify the board of directors of the entity and the municipal manager of the parent municipality of any non-compliance with a time provision concerning the entity's annual budget, adjustments budget or in-year reports.

(2) Such notification must –

- (a) be in the format contained in Schedule G;
- (b) be signed and dated by the chief executive officer; and
- (c) contain information on –
  - (i) the specific time provision which the entity has failed to comply with;
  - (ii) the specific date by which the entity will remedy its non-compliance;
  - (iii) the reason why the entity did not comply with the relevant time provision;
  - (iv) any implications on the finances, performance, governance and accountability arrangements in the entity that will be affected by the delay in meeting the time provision and the measure taken to address such implications;
  - (v) the steps the entity will take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future; and
  - (vi) a list of non-compliance with time provisions by the municipal entity in the previous three financial years.

---

<sup>30</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

**Framework for consideration of notifications of non-compliance with time provisions**

**69.** (1) The mayor of the parent municipality must promptly consider a notification referred to in regulation **68** with a view to take appropriate steps.

(2) When considering such notifications, the mayor must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the time provision in respect of which the non-compliance occurred;
- (b) the extent of the non-compliance;
- (c) the acceptability of the date by which the municipal entity will remedy its non-compliance; and
- (d) the steps the entity proposes to take to ensure compliance with the relevant time provision in future.

(3) The mayor of the parent municipality may require a chief executive officer of the municipal entity who has submitted a notification referred to in regulation **68** to furnish additional information necessary for the proper consideration of the notification.

(4) The mayor must table at the first meeting of the municipal council following the receipt of a notification referred to in subregulation (1).–

- (a) a copy of the notification; and
- (b) a report on steps taken to remedy the non-compliance.

**Submission of information to National Treasury**

**70.** The municipal manager must promptly send to the relevant provincial treasury and the National Treasury a copy of a notification received from the chief executive officer of a municipal entity referred to in regulation **68** together with a copy of the report referred to in regulation **69**(4)(b).

## CHAPTER 5

### FRAMEWORK FOR UNFORESEEN AND UNAVOIDABLE EXPENDITURE<sup>31</sup>

#### *Part 1: Unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure by municipalities*

##### **Authorisation of unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure**

71. (1) The mayor of a municipality may authorise expenditure in terms of section 29 of the Act only if –

- (a) the expenditure could not have been foreseen at the time the annual budget of the municipality was passed; and
- (b) the delay that will be caused pending approval of an adjustments budget by the municipal council in terms of section 28(2)(c) of the Act to authorise the expenditure may –
  - (i) result in significant financial loss for the municipality;
  - (ii) cause a disruption or suspension, or a serious threat to the continuation, of a basic municipal service;
  - (iii) lead to loss of life or serious injury or significant damage to property; or
  - (iv) obstruct the municipality from instituting or defending legal proceedings on an urgent basis.

(2) The mayor of a municipality may not authorise expenditure in terms of section 29 of the Act if the expenditure –

- (a) was considered by the council, but not approved in the annual budget or an adjustments budget;
- (b) is required for –
  - (i) price increases of goods or services during the financial year;
  - (ii) new municipal services or functions during the financial year;
  - (iii) the extension of existing municipal services or functions during the financial year;

---

<sup>31</sup> Sections 28(2)(b), 29 and 87(6)(c) of the Act require frameworks to guide the approval and authorisation of unforeseeable and unavoidable expenditure. This Chapter is intended to provide the required frameworks.

- (iv) the appointment of personnel during the financial year; or
- (v) allocating discretionary appropriations to any vote during the financial year; or
- (c) would contravene any existing council policy; or
- (d) is intended to ratify irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure.

#### **Monetary limits on unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure**

**72.** The amount of expenditure that a mayor of a municipality may authorise in terms of section 29 of the Act is limited to –

- (a) 5% of the municipality's own revenue in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget not exceeding R250 million;
- (b) the greater of R 5 million or 4% of the municipality's own revenue in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget greater than R250 million but not exceeding R500 million; and
- (c) R15 million in the case of a municipality with approved total revenue in its current annual budget greater than R500 million.

#### ***Part 2: Unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure by municipal entities***

##### **Approval of unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure**

**73.** (1) The board of directors of a municipal entity and the mayor of the parent municipality may approve expenditure in terms of section 87(6)(c) of the Act only if –

- (a) the expenditure could not have been foreseen at the time the annual budget of the entity was passed; and
- (b) the delay that will be caused pending approval of an adjustments budget to authorise the expenditure may–
  - (i) result in significant financial loss for the entity;
  - (ii) cause a disruption or suspension, or a serious threat to the continuation, of a basic municipal service;
  - (iii) lead to loss of life or serious injury or significant damage to property; or
  - (iv) obstruct the entity from instituting or defending legal proceedings on an urgent basis.

(2) The board of directors of a municipal entity and the mayor of the parent municipality may not approve expenditure in terms of section 87(6)(c) of the Act if the expenditure—

- (a) was considered by the board but not included in the approved annual budget of the entity;
- (b) is required for –
  - (i) price increases of goods or services during the financial year;
  - (ii) new municipal services or functions during the financial year;
  - (iii) the extension of existing municipal services or functions during the financial year;
  - (iv) the appointment of personnel during the financial year;
  - (v) increasing the remuneration or allowances of board members; or
  - (vi) allocating discretionary appropriations to any vote during the financial year;
- (c) would contravene any existing policy of the entity or its parent municipal; or
- (d) is intended to ratify irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure.

(3) Expenditure may be incurred by a municipal entity as unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure only after the municipal entity has communicated its intention in writing to the mayor of the parent municipality and the mayor has responded positively to the request. Such expenditure must still be approved by the board of directors appropriating the expenditure in an adjustments budget.

## CHAPTER 6

### UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR OR FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE

#### *Part 1: Unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure by municipalities*



**Issues to be considered by council committee<sup>32</sup>**

74. (1) A council committee contemplated in section 32(2)(a)(ii) of the Act to investigate the recoverability of any unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure must consider –

- (a) the measures already taken to recover such expenditure;
- (b) the cost of the measures already taken to recover such expenditure;
- (c) the estimated cost and likely benefit of further measures that can be taken to recover such expenditure; and
- (d) submit a motivation explaining its recommendation to the municipal council for a final decision.

(2) The municipal manager must provide all information required by the council committee referred to in subregulation (1), and any other information the council committee may require for the purpose of conducting a proper investigation.

***Part 2: Irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure by municipal entities*****Recovery of irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure<sup>33</sup>**

75. (1) The board of directors of a municipal entity must on discovery of any irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by the entity investigate the recoverability of such expenditure.

(2) After completing its investigation referred to in subregulation (1), the board of directors of the municipal entity must decide whether or not the relevant expenditure is recoverable, and –

- (a) if irrecoverable, certify that the expenditure is irrecoverable and submit a certificate to this effect to the mayor of the entity's parent municipality; or

---

<sup>32</sup> In terms of section 32(2)(a)(ii) of the Act a council committee must investigate the recoverability of irregular, fruitless and wasteful expenditure before it can be certified as irrecoverable by the municipal council. This regulation is intended to ensure that uniform norms and standards inform the investigations of such council committees, and that they will be given access to all the necessary information.

<sup>33</sup> See also section 102 of the Act.

- (b) if recoverable, decide on steps to be taken to recover the expenditure.

**Board may not delegate authority to certify expenditure as irrecoverable**

76. The board of directors of a municipal entity may not delegate its authority to certify expenditure as irrecoverable.

**Short title and commencement**

77. These Regulations are called the Municipal Budget and Reporting Regulations, 2008, and take effect on 1 July 2009.

**SCHEDULES**

**List of Schedules**

- Schedule A – Annual Budgets and Supporting Documentation of Municipalities
- Schedule B – Adjustments Budgets and Supporting Documentation of Municipalities
- Schedule C – In-year Reports of Municipalities
- Schedule D – Annual Budgets and Supporting Documentation of Municipal Entities
- Schedule E – Adjustments Budgets and Supporting Documentation of Municipal Entities
- Schedule F – In-year Reports of Municipal Entities
- Schedule G – Extensions and Non-compliance with Time Provisions

## SCHEDULE A

### ANNUAL BUDGETS AND SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION OF MUNICIPALITIES

#### **Format and content of annual budget and supporting documentation**

1. An annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipality must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168 of the Act.<sup>34</sup>

#### **Table of contents**

2. An annual budget and supporting documentation must commence with a table of contents and show the headings in the sequence set out below:

- *PART 1 – ANNUAL BUDGET*
  - Mayor's report
  - Resolutions
  - Executive summary
  - Annual budget tables
- *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*
  - Overview of annual budget process
  - Overview of alignment of annual budget with Integrated Development Plan
  - Measurable performance objectives and indicators
  - Overview of budget-related policies
  - Overview of budget assumptions
  - Overview of budget funding
  - Expenditure on allocations and grant programmes
  - Allocations and grants made by the municipality
  - Councillor and board member allowances and employee benefits
  - Monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow

- Annual budgets and service delivery and budget implementation plans – internal departments
- Annual budgets and service delivery agreements – municipal entities and other external mechanisms
- Contracts having future budgetary implications
- Capital expenditure details
- Legislation compliance status
- Other supporting documents
- Annual budgets of municipal entities attached to the municipalities annual budget
- Municipal manager's quality certification

### ***PART 1 – ANNUAL BUDGET***

#### **Mayor's report**

3. The mayor's report accompanying an annual budget must provide –
- (a) a summary of the medium-term service delivery objectives and the associated medium-term financial implications contained in the annual budget;
  - (b) a summary of linkages between the annual budget, the Integrated Development Plan and the political priorities at the national, provincial, district and local levels;
  - (c) a summary of infrastructure development objectives;
  - (d) a summary of material amendments made to the annual budget after the consultation processes; and
  - (e) any other information considered relevant by the mayor.

#### **Resolutions**

4. Resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the annual budget documentation:

---

<sup>34</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- (a) approval of the annual budget of the municipality, and specifically appropriating the amounts for the different votes, and for single-year and multi-year capital expenditures;
- (b) noting the consolidated annual budget in instances where a municipality has municipal entities;
- (c) approval of all rates, taxes and tariffs for services provided by the municipality;
- (d) approval of measurable performance objectives for the annual budget for each year of the medium term revenue and expenditure framework;
- (e) approval of the transfer of funds to a separate bank account for purposes contemplated in section 12 of the Act; and
- (f) approval of all budget-related policies or amendments to such policies<sup>35</sup>.

#### **Executive summary**

5. The executive summary must cover at least the following:
- (a) if a municipality has municipal entities or uses external mechanisms for service delivery, a summary of the total service delivery package and associated financial implications as reflected in the consolidated annual budget;
  - (b) the effect, including the financial and service delivery implications, of the annual budget, making reference to the annual budget tables, charts and explanations, and include a summary of service delivery, financial, rate and tariff implications for at least the budget year and the following two years;
  - (c) past performance and in particular the impact on the budget of the previous year's audited results and annual report, and include a summary of service delivery, financial, rate and tariff outcomes for at least the previous year and the expected for the current year;
  - (d) the consolidated financial position and summary medium term revenue and expenditure strategy;
  - (e) the municipality's priorities and linkages to the Integrated Development Plan;
  - (f) key amendments to the Integrated Development Plan;

---

<sup>35</sup> See footnote under regulation 7.

- (g) alignment with and achievement of national, provincial and district priorities;
- (h) key amendments to budget-related policies;
- (i) key demographic, economic and other assumptions; and
- (j) progress with the provision of basic services and financial implications for the medium term revenue and expenditure framework and long term sustainability.

#### **Annual budget tables**

6. If a municipality does not have any municipal entities, the annual budget tables must consist of a statement regarding changes in the basis of measurement and accounting policies from past financial years and the tables in the First Attachment to this Schedule, namely –

- (a) Table A1 Budget Summary
- (b) Table A2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)
- (c) Table A3 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table A5 Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding
- (f) Table A6 Budgeted Financial Position
- (g) Table A7 Budgeted Cash Flows
- (h) Table A8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (i) Table A9 Asset Management
- (j) Table A10 Basic service delivery measurement

7. If a municipality does have one or more municipal entities, the annual budget tables must consist of a statement regarding changes in the basis of measurement and accounting policies from past financial years and –

- (a) the tables mentioned in item 6; and
  - (b) the tables in the Second Attachment to this Schedule, namely –
-

- (i) Table A1 Consolidated Budget Summary
- (ii) Table A2 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)
- (iii) Table A3 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (iv) Table A4 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (v) Table A5 Consolidated Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding
- (vi) Table A6 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Position
- (vii) Table A7 Consolidated Budgeted Cash Flows
- (viii) Table A8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (ix) Table A9 Consolidated Asset Management
- (x) Table A10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

8. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.

9. If a municipality has municipal entities, the annual budget and supporting documentation must provide the required consolidated information and detail relating to individual municipal entities, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>36</sup>

## ***PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION***

### **Overview of annual budget process**

10. The overview of the annual budget process must at least –

---

<sup>36</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- (a) provide an overview of the process that was used to prepare the annual budget, the service delivery and budget implementation plan and the review of the Integrated Development Plan;
- (b) address the planning processes, highlighting the specific municipal policies taken into account in developing the annual budget;
- (c) detail the consultation process with the community and key stakeholders, and present a summarised list of community hearings and key stakeholders consulted; and
- (d) include the schedule of key deadlines as originally approved by the mayor in terms of section 21(1)(b) of the Act and provide an explanation for any deviation from the key deadlines approved.

#### **Overview of alignment of annual budget with Integrated Development Plan**

11. The overview of the alignment of the annual budget with the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality must at least –

- (a) provide details of any proposed amendments to the Integrated Development Plan including the service delivery and financial impact of such changes for the budget year and at least the two following years; and
- (b) provide a breakdown of all the revenue, operating expenditure and capital expenditure aligned to the goals and action plans of the Integrated Development Plan.

#### **Measurable performance objectives and indicators**

12. Measurable performance objectives and indicators must include at least –

- (a) key financial indicators and ratios dealing with –
  - (i) borrowing management;
  - (ii) safety of capital;
  - (iii) liquidity;
  - (iv) debtors' and creditors' management;
  - (v) the mix of expenditure type;
  - (vi) the mix of revenue source; and
  - (vii) unaccounted for losses in respect of services rendered; and
- (b) measurable performance objectives for –



- (i) revenue for each vote;
- (ii) revenue for each source; and
- (iii) for operating and capital expenditure for each vote.

13. When developing these measurable performance objectives, regard must be had for –

- (a) the municipality's Integrated Development Plan;
- (b) the service delivery and budget implementation plan;
- (c) economic development initiatives that facilitate job creation, economic growth, poverty alleviation; and
- (d) the provision of basic services.

14. The measurable performance objectives for the provision of free basic services in respect of property rates, water, sanitation, waste management and electricity must give details of –

- (a) the amount in rand value of each of the free basic services;
- (b) the level of service to be provided free;
- (c) the number of households to receive each of the free basic services;
- (d) the total budgeted cost of providing each free basic service; and
- (e) the total budgeted revenue foregone by providing each free basic service.

#### **Overview of budget-related policies**

15. The overview of budget-related policies<sup>37</sup> must include at least –

- (a) a list of the budget-related policies of the municipality including a reference of where the public can locate them; and
- (b) the proposed amendments to the budget-related policies taken into account in preparing the annual budget explaining the service delivery and financial implications for the budget year and at least the two following years.

#### **Overview of budget assumptions**

16. The overview of budget assumptions must –

---

<sup>37</sup> See footnote under regulation 7.

- (a) provide a summary explanation of the budget assumptions taken into account in preparing the annual budget, including those relating to demographic, economic, and service delivery trends where applicable;
- (b) highlight any significant changes in assumptions since the last approved annual budget or adjustments budget; and
- (c) include at least the following –
  - (i) the targets for the key financial indicators and ratios;
  - (ii) the basis and methodology for forecasting budget projections, including any present value assumptions, interest rates forecasts, bulk price movements and other related factors; and
  - (iii) alignment to generally recognised accounting practice.

#### **Overview of budget funding**

17. The overview of budget funding must explain how the annual budget is to be funded, which must include at least –

- (a) a narrative summary of –
  - (i) the funding of operating and capital expenditure;
  - (ii) financial plans;
  - (iii) reserves;
  - (iv) fiscal sustainability of the municipality; and
  - (v) the overall impact on rates and tariffs;
- (b) particulars of funding measures used to determine whether operating and capital expenditure are funded in accordance with section 18 of the Act;
- (c) particulars of property valuation, rates, tariffs and other charges;
- (d) the debtors' collection levels that have been estimated;
- (e) particulars of planned savings and efficiencies shown over the medium term revenue and expenditure framework;
- (f) particulars of the municipality's monetary investments by –
  - (i) type; and
  - (ii) maturity date;
- (g) particulars of contributions and donations in cash or in-kind planned to be received, specifically listing donor assistance secured by formal agreement or contract;

- (h) particulars of planned proceeds from the sale of assets;
- (i) particulars of planned proceeds from the lease of assets, where the period of the lease is three years or more;
- (j) particulars of the planned use of previous years' cash backed accumulated surplus including –
  - (i) any shortfall between liabilities or provisions and cash reserves set aside for this purpose;
  - (ii) details of council decisions to set aside funds including time schedules for progressively meeting funding of provisions;
  - (iii) details of allowances made for working capital - defined as holding sufficient funds to meet any financial obligations as they fall due; and
  - (iv) details of non-statutory reserves;
- (k) particulars of proposed future revenue sources;
- (l) particulars of planned use of any bank overdrafts and reasons therefore;
- (m) particulars of all existing and any new borrowing proposed to be raised; and
- (n) particulars of budgeted allocations and grants to the municipality, distinguishing between operating and capital, from the national government, provincial government, other municipalities, and other donors.

#### **Expenditure on allocations and grant programmes**

**18.** The disclosure on expenditure on allocations and grant programmes must provide particulars of planned expenditure against each allocation and grant in the same format as the information on allocations and grant receipts and a reconciliation of allocations, receipts and unspent funds.

#### **Allocations or grants made by the municipality**

**19.** The disclosure on allocations or grants made by the municipality must provide particulars of any allocations and grants by the municipality to –

- (a) other municipalities;
- (b) any municipal entities and other external mechanisms assisting the municipality in the exercise of its functions or powers;
- (c) any other organs of state; and

- (d) any organisations or bodies outside any sphere of government as referred to in section 67(1) of the Act.

**Councillors and board member allowances and employee benefits**

20. The disclosure on councillors and board member allowances and employee benefits must present the following information –

- (a) a summary of councillor allowances;
- (b) a summary of employee benefits for the municipal manager and senior managers;
- (c) a summary of employee benefits for other municipal employees;
- (d) a summary of allowances for board members of municipal entities;
- (e) a summary of employee benefits for chief executive officers and senior managers of municipal entities;
- (f) a summary of employee benefits for other employees of municipal entities;
- (g) detail of the cost to the municipality for the budget year of the salary/wage, pension and medical aid contributions, other benefits and allowances of –
  - (i) each political office-bearer of the municipality detailed separately;
  - (ii) councillors of the municipality collectively;
  - (iii) the municipal manager and each senior manager as defined by section 57 of the Municipal Systems Act, detailed separately; and
  - (iv) all other staff collectively;
- (h) the cost for the budget year to each municipal entity of the salary/wage, pension contributions, medical aid and other benefits and allowances of –
  - (i) each member of the entity's board of directors detailed separately;
  - (ii) the chief executive officer and each senior manager of the entity detailed separately; and
  - (iii) all other staff collectively;
- (i) the number of councillors;
- (j) the number of personnel employed by the municipality, distinguishing between senior managers appointed in terms of section 57 of the Municipal Systems Act, including the municipal manager, other managers, technical and professional staff and other staff members. The number of personnel must be expressed as both full time equivalent and head count; and

- (k) the number of personnel employed by each municipal entity, distinguishing between the board members, senior managers including the chief executive officer, other managers, technical as well as professional staff and other staff members. The number of personnel must be expressed as both full time equivalent and head count.

**Monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow**

21. The disclosure on monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow must include –

- (a) a consolidated projection of revenue by source and expenditure by type for the budget year broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years;
- (b) a consolidated projection of revenue and expenditure by municipal vote broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years;
- (c) where the municipal vote is different to the standard classification, a consolidated projection of revenue and expenditure by standard classification broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years;
- (d) a consolidated projection of capital expenditure by vote broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years;
- (e) where the municipal vote is different to the standard classification, a consolidated projection of capital expenditure by standard classification broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years; and
- (f) a consolidated projection of cash flow for the budget year setting out receipts by source and payments by type, both operating and capital, broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the following two years.

**Annual budgets and service delivery and budget implementation plans – internal departments**

22. The disclosure on annual budgets and service delivery and budget implementation plans for internal departments must provide an executive summary of the SDBIP for each internal department of the municipality.

23. Where internal departments cover more than one vote, detail must be provided for each vote.

24. Each departmental executive summary must include at least –

- (a) a reference as to where the public can locate the detailed departmental SDBIP;
- (b) a brief description of the services provided which may include the level and standard of service provided to each customer group;
- (c) a description of senior management capability and structure;
- (d) an explanation of how the department's performance objectives and indicators relate to the Integrated Development Plan;
- (e) a description of the changes to service levels and standards over the period covered in the medium term revenue and expenditure framework;
- (f) commentary on the past year's performance and the impact on future performance objectives;
- (g) a summary of revenue by source and operating and capital expenditure by type;
- (h) a summary of any risks to achieving revenue projections, any expected major shifts in revenue patterns and any planned alternative sources of revenue;
- (i) a description of the major features of expenditure including highlighting discretionary and non-discretionary expenditure; and
- (j) a brief narrative on the departmental capital programme in the context of the overall capital programme of the municipality.

**Annual budgets and service delivery agreements – entities and other external mechanisms**

25. The disclosure on annual budgets and service delivery agreements for entities and other external mechanisms must include at least –

- (a) a list of entities and other external mechanisms showing the following –
  - (i) name of organisation;
  - (ii) period of agreement;
  - (iii) service provided;
  - (iv) expiry date of service delivery agreement or contract; and
  - (v) monetary value of any agreement with an external mechanism;
- (b) the aggregated annual budget of all entities showing –
  - (i) revenue by source and expenditure by type;
  - (ii) capital expenditure and sources of funds;
  - (iii) financial position; and
  - (iv) cash flows; and
- (c) an executive summary of the annual budget and multi-year business plan of each existing and proposed municipal entity, or external mechanism providing a substantial amount of a municipal service, including –
  - (i) ownership and control details and whether there are plans to disestablish the entity;
  - (ii) the oversight processes instituted by the municipality;
  - (iii) the mandate of the municipal entity or other external mechanism, including any proposed amendments to the mandate;
  - (iv) the funding of the municipal entity or other external mechanism over the period covered in the medium term revenue and expenditure framework;
  - (v) a summary of the service delivery agreement between the municipality and the entity or other external mechanism highlighting any material amendments and including a description of the services provided including the level and standard of service provided to each customer group and a description of the changes to service levels and standards over the period covered in the medium term revenue and expenditure framework;

- (vi) an explanation of how the entity's or external mechanism's mandate links to the Integrated Development Plan;
- (vii) commentary on past performance and the impact on future performance objectives;
- (viii) a summary of revenue by source and operating and capital expenditure by type;
- (ix) a summary of any risks to revenue projections, expected major shifts in revenue patterns and potential alternative sources of revenue;
- (x) a description of the major features of expenditure including highlighting discretionary and non-discretionary expenditure; and
- (xi) a brief narrative on the overall capital programme for the entity.

#### **Contracts having future budgetary implications**

**26.** The disclosure on contracts having future budgetary implications must include a table of all contracts which will impose financial obligations on the municipality beyond the three years covered in the annual budget which includes –

- (a) the names of all contracting parties,
- (b) information on expenditure on each contract for the last three years, if any,
- (c) the total expenditure on each contract to date;
- (d) the planned expenditure on each contract for the budget year, and the follow two years; and
- (e) an estimate of the total future budgetary implications of each contract .

#### **Capital expenditure details**

**27.** The disclosure on capital expenditure details must include –

- (a) a summary of budgeted capital expenditure by class and sub-class;
- (b) a summary of the financial implications of the capital expenditure budget, including –
  - (i) the total capital cost;
  - (ii) the costs that will be incurred until the item of property, plant and equipment, investment property or intangible asset is operational; and
  - (iii) the future financial implications of the capital expenditure on revenue by source and expenditure by vote over the estimated useful life of the item



of property, plant and equipment, investment property or intangible asset;

- (c) a list of capital programmes and projects grouped by municipality and each municipal entity aligned to the goals of the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality; and
- (d) a list of capital programmes or projects delayed from previous financial years grouped by parent municipality and each municipal entity.

#### **Legislation compliance status**

28. The disclosure on legislation compliance must provide a brief summary of the status of the implementation of legislation applicable to municipalities, including progress made or delays experienced in implementation.

#### **Other supporting documents**

29. A municipality must add to its budget documentation any other supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the impact of the annual budget on service delivery and the state of financial affairs of the municipality including its municipal entities.

#### **Annual budgets of municipal entities attached to the annual budget**

30. Give a list of the municipal entity annual budgets attached to the annual budget.

#### **Municipal manager's quality certification**

31. An annual budget and supporting documentation must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below.

**Quality certificate**

I ....., municipal manager of ..... (name of municipality), hereby certify that the annual budget and supporting documentation have been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and the regulations made under the Act, and that the annual budget and supporting documents are consistent with the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality.

Print Name .....

Municipal manager of ..... (name and demarcation code of municipality)

Signature .....

Date .....

## **SCHEDULE B**

### **ADJUSTMENTS BUDGETS AND SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION OF MUNICIPALITIES**

#### **Format and content of adjustments budgets and supporting documentation**

1. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation of a municipality that is –
  - (a) contemplated in subregulation 23(1) must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act<sup>38</sup>, and
  - (b) is contemplated in subregulations 23 (3), (4), (5) and (6) must have all the headings in the sequence shown in Part 1 of the table of contents below, and the headings that are relevant to the particular adjustments budget from Part 2 of the table of contents below, and contain the information described in relation to the relevant headings in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act

#### **Table of contents**

2. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation must commence with a table of contents and show the relevant headings in the sequence set out below –
  - *PART 1 – ADJUSTMENTS BUDGET*
    - Mayor's report
    - Resolutions
    - Executive summary
    - Adjustments budget tables
  - *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*
    - Adjustments to budget assumptions

- Adjustments to budget funding
- Adjustments to expenditure on allocations and grant programmes
- Adjustments to allocations and grants made by the municipality
- Adjustments to councillor allowances and employee benefits
- Adjustments to service delivery and budget implementation plan
- Adjustments to capital expenditure
- Other supporting documents
- Municipal manager's quality certification

## **PART 1 – ADJUSTMENTS BUDGET**

### **Mayor's report**

3. The mayor's report accompanying an adjustments budget must provide –
- (a) a summary of the reasons for the adjustments budget having regard to the material variances highlighted in the latest monthly budget statement including at least the following where applicable –
    - (i) new allocations of cash backed accumulated funds;
    - (ii) multi-year funds shifting in relation to the capital programme;
    - (iii) unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure; and
    - (iv) allocations and grant adjustments;
  - (b) a recommendation that the municipal council approves the adjustments budget;
  - (c) a recommendation that the municipal council approves the revision to the service delivery targets and performance indicators in the service delivery and budget and implementation plan if applicable; and
  - (d) any other information considered relevant by the mayor.

### **Resolutions**

4. Resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the adjustments budget documentation –
- (a) approval of the adjustments budget;

---

<sup>38</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- (b) approval of any adjustments permitted in terms of section 28(2) of the Act;
- (c) approval of the transfer of funds to a separate bank account for purposes contemplated in section 12 of the Act;
- (d) approval of revisions to the monthly and quarterly service delivery targets and performance indicators in the service delivery and budget implementation plan, if any, to correspond with the approval of the adjustments budget; and
- (e) approval of any amendments to budget-related policies<sup>39</sup> necessitated by the adjustments budget.

#### **Executive summary**

5. The executive summary must cover at least the following –
- (a) the effect, including the financial and service delivery implications, of the adjustments budget on service delivery and related financial implications making reference to the adjustments budget tables, charts and explanations.
  - (b) the effect of the adjustments budget on the provision of basic services;
  - (c) the effect of the adjustments budget on the service delivery and budget implementation plan, service delivery agreements and medium term revenue and expenditure framework and long term financial sustainability of the municipality; and
  - (d) highlighting the adjustments made to the approved annual budget and any subsequent approved adjustments budgets.

#### **Adjustments budget tables**

6. If a municipality does not have any municipal entities, the adjustment budget tables must consist of the tables in the First Attachment to this Schedule, namely –
- (a) Table B1 Adjustments Budget Summary
  - (b) Table B2 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)
  - (c) Table B3 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
  - (d) Table B4 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

---

<sup>39</sup> See footnote under regulation 7.

- (e) Table B5 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding
- (f) Table B6 Adjustments Budget Financial Position
- (g) Table B7 Adjustments Budget Cash Flows
- (h) Table B8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (i) Table B9 Asset Management
- (j) Table B10 Basic service delivery measurement

7. If a municipality does have one or more municipal entities, the adjustment budget tables must consist of –

- (a) the tables mentioned in item 6; and
- (b) the tables in the Second Attachment to this Schedule, namely –
  - (i) Table B1 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Summary
  - (ii) Table B2 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)
  - (iii) Table B3 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
  - (iv) Table B4 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
  - (v) Table B5 Consolidated Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding
  - (vi) Table B6 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Position
  - (vii) Table B7 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Cash Flows
  - (viii) Table B8 Consolidated cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
  - (ix) Table B9 Consolidated Asset Management
  - (x) Table B10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

8. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.

9. If a municipality has municipal entities, the information in 6, 7 and 8 and any other supporting documentation must be presented for the parent municipality only.

## **PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

### **Adjustments to budget assumptions**

10. Provide a description of any adjustments made to the budget assumptions presented in the annual budget.

### **Adjustments to budget funding**

11. The disclosure on adjustments to budget funding must, where applicable, include –

- (a) a narrative summary of the impact of the adjustments budget on –
  - (i) the funding of operating and capital expenditure;
  - (ii) financial plans;
  - (iii) reserves; and
  - (iv) the financial sustainability of the municipality;
- (b) a reconciliation showing that operating and capital expenditure remain funded in accordance with section 18 of the Act;
- (c) adjustments to collection levels estimated;
- (d) any adjustments to the municipality's monetary investments by –
  - (i) type; and
  - (ii) maturity date;
- (e) any adjustments to contributions and donations in cash or in-kind specifically listing donor assistance secured by formal agreement or contract;
- (f) adjustments related to proceeds from the sale of assets;
- (g) adjustments related to proceeds from the lease of assets, where the period of the lease is three years or more;
- (h) adjustments related to the planned use of previous years' cash backed accumulated surplus including –
  - (i) any shortfall between liabilities or provisions and cash reserves set aside for this purpose;

- (ii) municipal council decisions to set aside funds including time schedules for progressively meeting funding of provisions;
- (iii) allowances made for working capital ; and
- (iv) non-statutory reserves;
- (i) adjustments related to new proposed loans to be raised in the budget year; and
- (j) adjustments related to allocations and grants to the municipality, distinguishing between operating and capital, from national government, provincial government, other municipalities and other donors.

**Adjustments to expenditure on allocations and grant programmes**

12. Provide a summary of any adjustments made to planned expenditure of allocations and grants received.

**Adjustments to allocations or grants made by the municipality**

13. Provide a summary of any adjustments to allocations or grants made by the municipality.

**Adjustments to councillors and board members allowances and employee benefits**

14. Provide details of any adjustments to councillor and board members allowances and employee benefits.

**Adjustments to service delivery and budget implementation plan**

15. Provide details of any adjustments to quarterly service delivery targets and performance indicators in the plan.

16. Provide a summary of any adjustments made to the key financial indicators presented in the annual budget.

17. Provide details of any adjustments to monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow.



18. Provide explanations for the adjustments referred to in 15, 16 and 17 referring to the relevant monthly budget statement where appropriate.

**Adjustments to capital expenditure**

19. The disclosure on adjustments to the capital programme must provide at least –

- (a) a summary of adjustments to capital expenditure by class and sub-class;
- (b) a list of adjusted capital programmes and projects of the municipality aligned to the goals of the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality.

**Other supporting documents**

20. A municipality must add to its adjustments budget documents any supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the impact of the adjustments budget on service delivery and the state of financial affairs of the municipality including municipal entities.

**Municipal manager's quality certification**

21. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below:

**Quality certificate**

I, ....., municipal manager of ..... (name of municipality), hereby certify that the adjustments budget and supporting documentation have been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and the regulations made under that Act, and that the adjustments budget and supporting documentation are consistent with the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality.

Print name .....

Municipal manager of..... (name and demarcation code of municipality)

Signature .....

Date .....

## SCHEDULE C

### IN-YEAR REPORTS OF MUNICIPALITIES

#### Format and content of in-year reports

1. An in-year report of a municipality must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>40</sup>

#### Table of contents

2. An in-year report must commence with a table of contents and show the headings in the sequence set out below –

- *PART 1 – IN-YEAR REPORT*
  - Mayor's report (required if tabled in the municipal council)
  - Resolutions (required if tabled in the municipal council)
  - Executive summary
  - In-year budget statement tables
- *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*
  - Debtors' Analysis
  - Creditors' Analysis
  - Investment portfolio analysis
  - Allocation and grant receipts and expenditure
  - Councillor and board member allowances and employee benefits
  - Material variances to the service delivery and budget implementation plan
  - Parent municipality financial performance
  - Municipal entity financial performance
  - Capital programme performance
  - Other supporting documents
  - In-year reports of municipal entities attached the municipality's in-year report
  - Municipal manager's quality certification

---

<sup>40</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

## PART 1 – IN-YEAR REPORT

### Mayor's report

3. The mayor's report accompanying an in-year must provide –
  - (a) a summary of whether the municipality's budget is being implemented in accordance with the service delivery and budget implementation plan and any service delivery agreements with municipal entities;
  - (b) a summary of any financial problems or risks facing the municipality or any such entity; and
  - (c) any other information considered relevant by the mayor.
4. For the mid-year budget and performance assessment, the mayor's report must also provide –
  - (a) a summary of the past year's annual report, and progress on resolving problems identified in the annual report and the audit report;
  - (b) a summary of the potential impact of the national adjustments budget and the relevant provincial adjustments budget; and
  - (c) a recommendation as to whether an adjustments budget for the municipality is necessary.

### Resolutions

5. If an in-year report is tabled in the municipal council, resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the documentation, as may be relevant –
  - (a) noting the monthly budget statement and any supporting documents;
  - (b) noting the quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and the financial affairs for the municipality referred to in section 52(d) of the Act;
  - (c) noting the mid-year budget and performance assessment referred to in section 72 of the Act;
  - (d) noting the in-year reports of any municipal entities; and
  - (e) any other resolutions that may be required.

**Executive summary**

6. The executive summary of a monthly budget statement must cover at least the following –

- (a) the municipality's consolidated performance, in relation to both the approved annual budget and the latest approved adjustments budget, with specific reference to the financial and non-financial impact of the performance of municipal entities on the consolidated performance making reference to the in-year report tables, charts and explanations;
- (b) any material variances from the service delivery and budget implementation plan; and
- (c) any remedial or corrective steps taken or to be taken to ensure that projected revenue and expenditure remain within the municipality's budget.

7. The executive summary of the quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and the financial affairs for the municipality must, in addition to the information in item 6, also include a summary of –

- (a) the municipality's consolidated performance in implementing the service delivery and budget implementation plan referring to actual service delivery achieved compared with the quarterly targets and explanations of any material variances, and taking into account performance in relation to both the approved annual budget and the latest adjustments budget;
- (b) the performance in relation to the quarterly performance targets for the delivery of basic services; and
- (c) the financial impact of the performance to date on the medium term revenue and expenditure framework and long term sustainability.

8. The executive summary of the mid-year budget and performance assessment must, in addition to the information in items 6 and 7 provide a summary of the potential impact of the national adjustments budget and the relevant provincial adjustments budget.

**In-year budget statement tables**

9. If a municipality does not have any municipal entities, the in-year budget statement tables must consist of the tables in the First Attachment to this Schedule, namely –

- (a) Table C1 s71 Monthly Budget Statement Summary
- (b) Table C2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)
- (c) Table C3 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table C4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table C5 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)
- (f) Table C6 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
- (g) Table C7 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

10. If a municipality does have one or more municipal entities, the in-year budget statement tables must consist of –

- (a) the tables mentioned in item 9; and
- (b) the tables in the Second Attachment to this Schedule, namely –
  - (i) Table C1 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement Summary
  - (ii) Table C2 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)
  - (iii) Table C3 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
  - (iv) Table C4 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
  - (v) Table C5 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)
  - (vi) Table C6 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
  - (vii) Table C7 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

11. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.

12. If a municipality has municipal entities, the information in items 6 and 7 must be consolidated covering the parent municipality's monthly budget statement and municipal entities monthly budget statements.

## **PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

### **Debtors' analysis**

13. The debtors' analysis must contain –

- (a) an aged analysis reconciled with the financial position grouped by –
  - (i) revenue source; and
  - (ii) customer group; and
- (b) any bad debts written off by customer group.

### **Creditors' analysis**

14. The creditors analysis must contain an aged analysis by customer type reconciled with the financial position.

### **Investment portfolio analysis**

15. The investment portfolio analysis must include information consistent with the requirements of the Municipal Investment Regulations, 2005 issued by the National Treasury.

### **Allocation and grant receipts and expenditure**

16. The disclosure on allocation and grant receipts and expenditure must reflect particulars of –

- (a) allocation and grant receipts and expenditure against each allocation or grant; and
- (b) any change in allocations as a result of –

- (i) an adjustments budget of the national or provincial government or district or local municipality; and
- (ii) changes in grants from other providers.

**Expenditure on councillor and board members allowances and employee benefits**

17. The disclosure on councillor and board members allowances and employee benefits must include a comparison of actual expenditure and budgeted expenditure on –

- (a) councillor allowances;
- (b) board member allowances; and
- (c) employee benefits.

**Material variances to the service delivery and budget implementation plan**

18. In the monthly financial statements provide a disclosure on monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow that includes a consolidated projection of cash flow for the budget year setting out receipts by source and payments by type, per month for the budget year with actual for past months and revised forecasts for future months, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year.

19. In the quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and the financial affairs for the municipality provide –

- (a) a review of actual performance against the quarterly targets for measurable performance objectives and service delivery;
- (b) a consolidated projection of revenue and operating expenditure per month for the budget year with actual for past months and revised forecasts for future months, and the total for the two years following the budget year; and
- (c) a projection of capital expenditure by project broken down per month for the budget year showing actual for past periods and revised forecasts for future periods, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year.

20. In the mid-year budget and performance assessment provide an explanation of the cause of variations from the approved annual budget and the impact on any contractual agreements and the overall budget, if any.

21. Where (17), (18) and (19) indicate a material variance between the actual year-to-date performance compared with the monthly or quarterly targets from the service delivery and budget implementation plan, provide explanations for such variances and indicate the likely impact on annual performance agreements of the municipal manager and senior managers.

**Parent municipality financial performance**

22. If the municipality has municipal entities, provide the monthly statement of financial performance for the parent municipality only.

**Municipal entity summary**

23. If the municipality has municipal entities, provide a summary for all entities of revenue, operating expenditure and capital expenditure.

**Capital programme performance**

24. The disclosure on capital programme performance must include at least –

- (a) capital expenditure by month; and
- (b) a summary of capital expenditure by asset class and sub-class.

**Other supporting documents**

25. A municipality must add to its in-year report any supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the review of actual service delivery and financial performance compared to the approved annual budget and the latest approved adjustments budget.

**In-year reports of municipal entities attached to the in-year report**

26. Give a list of the municipal entity in-year reports attached to the in-year report.



**Municipal manager's quality certification**

27. An in-year report must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below:

**Quality certificate**

I, ....., the municipal manager of.....(name of municipality), hereby certify that –

(mark as appropriate)

- ☐ the monthly budget statement
- ☐ quarterly report on the implementation of the budget and financial state affairs of the municipality
- ☐ mid-year budget and performance assessment

for the month of ..... of ..... has been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and regulations made under that Act.

Print name \_\_\_\_\_

Municipal manager of.....(name and demarcation code of municipality)

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

## **SCHEDULE D**

### **ANNUAL BUDGETS AND SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS OF MUNICIPAL ENTITIES**

#### **Format and content of annual budgets**

1. An annual budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>41</sup>

#### **Table of contents**

2. An annual budget and supporting documentation must commence with a table of contents and show the headings in the sequence set out below –

- *PART 1 – ANNUAL BUDGET*
  - Chairperson's report
  - Resolutions
  - Executive summary
  - Annual budget tables
- *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*
  - Overview of annual budget process
  - Overview of alignment of annual budget with service delivery agreement
  - Measurable performance objectives and indicators
  - Overview of budget-related policies
  - Overview of budget assumptions
  - Overview of budget funding
  - Expenditure on allocations and grant programmes
  - Board member allowances and employee benefits

---

<sup>41</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- Monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow
- Contracts having future budgetary implications
- Capital expenditure details
- Legislation compliance status
- Other supporting documents
- Chief executive officer's quality certification

## **PART 1 – ANNUAL BUDGET**

### **Chairperson's report**

3. The chairperson's report accompanying an annual budget must provide –
- (a) a summary of the medium term service delivery objectives and the associated medium term financial implications of the annual budget;
  - (b) a summary of the medium term infrastructure development objectives of the parent municipality applicable to the municipal entity;
  - (c) a summary of alignment of the municipal entity's annual budget and multi-year business plan with the parent municipality's annual budget and Integrated Development Plan;
  - (d) a summary of the main service delivery agreement with the municipality and any other agreements with the parent municipality or other municipal entities;
  - (e) a summary of any limits determined by the parent municipality applicable to the entity including limits on tariffs, revenue, expenditure and borrowing;
  - (f) a summary of material amendments made to the annual budget after the consultation processes with the parent municipality; and
  - (g) any other information considered relevant by the chairperson.

### **Resolutions**

4. Resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the municipal entity's annual budget documentation –
- (a) approval of the annual budget of the municipal entity;
  - (b) approval of tariffs for services provided by the municipal entity;
  - (c) approval of any amendments to the municipal entity's multi-year business plan;

- (d) approval of measurable performance objectives for the annual budget for each year of the medium term revenue and expenditure framework; and
- (e) approval of all budget-related policies or amendments to such policies.

#### **Executive summary**

5. The executive summary must cover at least the following –
- (a) the effect of the annual budget making reference to the annual budget tables, charts and explanations, and include a summary of service delivery, financial and tariff implications for at least the next three years;
  - (b) past performance and in particular the impact of the previous year's audited results and annual report;
  - (c) the financial position and medium term financial strategy;
  - (d) alignment to the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality and the parent municipality's Integrated Development Plan including alignment with and achievement of the parent municipality's goals in relation to national and provincial priorities;
  - (e) key amendments to the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality;
  - (f) key demographic, economic and other assumptions;
  - (g) key amendments to the municipal entity's budget-related policies; and
  - (h) progress with the provision of basic services provided by the entity and related financial implications.

#### **Annual budget tables**

6. The annual budget tables must consist of a statement regarding changes in the basis of measurement and accounting policies from past financial years and the tables in the Attachment to this Schedule, namely –
- (a) Table D1 Budget Summary
  - (b) Table D2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
  - (c) Table D3 Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding
  - (d) Table D4 Budgeted Financial Position
  - (e) Table D5 Budgeted Cash Flows

7. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.
8. If a municipal entity's business operations are sufficiently complex, the parent municipality may stipulate additional requirements for the annual budget tables to ensure that adequate information is provided.
9. If a municipal entity's business operations extend across multiple municipal votes, the parent municipality must stipulate the provision of additional information needed to complete the necessary consolidations.

## **PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

### **Overview of annual budget process**

10. The overview of the annual budget process must at least –
  - (a) provide an overview of the process that was used to prepare the municipal entity's annual budget and multi-year business plan;
  - (b) address the planning processes, highlighting the parent municipality's budget preparation requirements and policies taken into account in developing the annual budget;
  - (c) detail the consultation process with the community and key stakeholders, and present a summarised list of community hearings and key stakeholders consulted; and
  - (d) include the schedule of key deadlines as originally approved by the mayor in terms of section 21(1)(b) of the Act, highlighting the activities impacting on the entity and any special requirements imposed by the parent municipality.

### **Overview of alignment of annual budget with service delivery agreement**

11. The overview of alignment of the annual budget with the service delivery agreement must at least –
  - (a) provide details of the ownership and control of the municipal entity;
  - (b) provide a summary of the oversight processes instituted by the municipality;

- (c) give details of the mandate of the municipal entity, including any proposed amendments to the mandate;
- (d) provide particulars of the service delivery agreement between the parent municipality and the entity;
- (e) summarise any proposed material amendments to the existing service delivery agreement;
- (f) detail how the entity's annual budget and multi-year business plan are aligned to –
  - (i) the parent municipality's Integrated Development Plan; and
  - (ii) the service delivery agreement between the parent municipality and the entity; and
- (g) provide details of the funding of the municipal entity by the parent municipality.

**Measurable performance objectives and indicators**

**12.** Measurable performance objectives and indicators must include at least

- (a) key financial indicators and ratios dealing with –
  - (i) borrowing management;
  - (ii) safety of capital;
  - (iii) liquidity;
  - (iv) debtors' and creditors' management;
  - (v) the mix of expenditure type;
  - (vi) the mix of revenue source; and
  - (vii) unaccounted for losses in respect of services rendered; and
- (b) measurable performance objectives for –
  - (i) revenue for each source; and
  - (ii) for operating and capital expenditure.

**13.** When developing these measurable performance objectives, regard must be had for –

- (a) the entity's multi-year business plan;
- (b) the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality;

- (c) economic development initiatives that facilitate job creation, economic growth, poverty alleviation; and
- (d) the provision of basic services.

14. The measurable performance objectives for the provision of free basic services in respect of water, sanitation, waste management and electricity must give details of –

- (a) the amount in rand value of each of the free basic services;
- (b) the level of service to be provided free;
- (c) the number of households to receive each of the free basic services;
- (d) the total budgeted cost of providing each free basic service; and
- (e) the total budgeted revenue foregone by providing each free basic service.

#### **Overview of budget-related policies**

15. The overview of budget-related policies must include at least –

- (a) a list of the budget-related policies of the municipal entity including a reference of where the public can locate them; and
- (b) the proposed amendments to the budget-related policies taken into account in preparing the annual budget, explaining the service delivery and financial implications for the budget year and at least the two following years.

#### **Overview of budget assumptions**

16. The overview of budget assumptions must –

- (a) provide a summary explanation of the budget assumptions taken into account in preparing the annual budget, including those relating to demographic, economic, and service delivery trends where applicable, taking into account the assumptions provided by the parent municipality;
- (b) highlight any significant changes in assumptions since the last approved annual budget or adjustments budget; and
- (c) include at least the following –
  - (i) the targets for the key financial indicators and ratios;
  - (ii) the basis and methodology for forecasting budgets projections, including any present value assumptions, interest rates forecasts, bulk price

- movements, dividend policy of parent municipality, tax measures, and other related factors; and
- (iii) alignment to generally recognised accounting practice.

### **Overview of budget funding**

17. The overview of budget funding must explain how the annual budget is to be funded, which must include at least the following –

- (a) a narrative summary of –
  - (i) the funding of operating and capital expenditure;
  - (ii) financial plans;
  - (iii) reserves;
  - (iv) the fiscal viability of the municipal entity;
  - (v) the overall impact on rates and tariffs; and
  - (vi) allocations from or distributions to the parent municipality;
- (b) particulars of funding measures used to determine whether operating and capital expenditure are funded in accordance with section 18 of the Act;
- (c) particulars of tariffs and other charges;
- (d) the debtors' collection levels that have been estimated;
- (e) particulars of planned savings and efficiencies for the medium term as detailed in the multi year business plan;
- (f) particulars of the municipal entity's monetary investments by –
  - (i) type, and
  - (ii) maturity date;
- (g) particulars of contributions and donations in cash or in-kind received planned to be received, specifically listing donor assistance secured by formal agreement or contract;
- (h) particulars of planned proceeds from the sale of assets;
- (i) particulars of planned proceeds from the lease of assets, where the period of the lease is three years or more;
- (j) particulars of the planned use of previous years' cash backed accumulated surplus including –
  - (i) any shortfall between liabilities or provisions and cash reserves set aside for this purpose;



- (ii) details of board decisions to set aside funds including time schedules for progressively meeting funding of provisions;
- (iii) details of allowances made for working capital – defined as holding sufficient funds to meet any financial obligations as they fall due; and
- (iv) details of non statutory reserves;
- (k) particulars of proposed future revenue sources;
- (l) particulars of planned use of any bank overdrafts and reasons therefore;
- (m) particulars of any existing and any new borrowing proposed to be raised;
- (n) particulars of allocations from or distributions to the parent municipality; and
- (o) particulars of any other transfers and grants to the municipal entity.

#### **Expenditure on allocations and grant programmes**

18. Provide particulars of planned expenditure against each allocation and grant planned to be received in the same format as the information on allocation and grant receipts.

#### **Board member allowances and employee benefits**

19. The disclosure on board member allowances and employee benefits must present the following information –

- (a) a summary of board member, and employee benefits;
- (b) the detail of the cost to the municipal entity for the budget year of the salary/wage, pension and medical aid contributions, other benefits and allowances of –
  - (i) each board member, detailed separately;
  - (ii) the chief executive officer and each senior manager, detailed separately; and
  - (iii) all other staff collectively; and
- (c) the number of personnel employed by the municipal entity, distinguishing between board members, senior managers, including the chief executive officer, senior managers, other managers, technical and professional staff and other staff members. The number of personnel must be expressed as both full time equivalent and head count.

**Monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow**

20. The disclosure on monthly targets for revenue, expenditure, revenue and cash flow must include –

- (a) a projection of operating revenue by source and expenditure by type for the budget year broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year;
- (b) a projection of capital expenditure by project broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year;
- (c) a projection of cash flow for the budget year setting out receipts by source and payments by type, both operating and capital, broken down per month for the budget year, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year; and
- (d) a list of entities and other external mechanisms showing the following –
  - (i) name of organisation;
  - (ii) period of agreement;
  - (iii) service provided;
  - (iv) expiry date of service delivery agreement or contract; and
  - (v) monetary value of any agreement with an external mechanism.

**Contracts having future budgetary implications**

21. The disclosure on contracts having future budgetary implications must include a table of all contracts which will impose financial obligations on the municipal entity beyond the three years covered in the annual budget which includes

- (a) the names of all contracting parties,
- (b) information on expenditure on each contract for the last three years, if any,
- (c) the total expenditure on each contract to date;
- (d) the planned expenditure on each contract for the budget year, and the follow two years; and
- (e) an estimate of the total future budgetary implications of each contract.

**Capital expenditure details**

22. The disclosure on capital expenditure details must include –

- (a) a summary of budgeted capital expenditure by asset class and sub-class;

- (b) a summary of the financial implications of the capital expenditure budget, including –
  - (i) the total capital cost;
  - (ii) the costs that will be incurred until the item of property, plant and equipment, investment property or intangible asset is operational; and
  - (iii) the future financial implications of the capital expenditure on revenue by source and expenditure by vote over the estimated useful life of the item of property, plant and equipment, investment property or intangible asset;
- (c) a list of capital programmes and projects aligned to the goals of the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality; and
- (d) a list of capital programmes or projects delayed from previous financial years.

**Legislation compliance status**

23. The disclosure on legislation compliance status provide a brief summary of the status of the implementation of any legislation applicable to the municipal entity including progress made and delays experienced in implementation.

**Other supporting documents**

24. A municipal entity must add to its budget documents any supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the impact of the annual budget on service delivery and the state of financial affairs of the municipal entity.

**Chief executive officer quality certification**

25. An annual budget and supporting documentation must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below.

**Quality certificate**

I ....., chief executive officer of ..... (name of municipal entity), hereby certify that the annual budget and supporting documentation have been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and the regulations made under the Act, and that the annual budget and supporting documentation are consistent with the Integrated Development Plan of the parent municipality, the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality and the business plan of the entity.

Print name .....

Chief executive officer of ..... (name of municipal entity)

Signature .....

Date .....

## **SCHEDULE E**

### **ADJUSTMENTS BUDGETS AND SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS OF MUNICIPAL ENTITIES**

#### **Format and content of adjustments budget and supporting documentation**

1. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation of a municipal entity that is –
  - (a) contemplated in section 87(6)(a) and (b) of the Act must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act<sup>42</sup>, and
  - (b) is contemplated in section 87(6)(c) and (d) of the Act must have all the headings in the sequence shown in Part 1 of the table of contents below, and the headings that are relevant to the particular adjustments budget from Part 2 of the table of contents below, and contain the information described in relation to the relevant headings in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act

#### **Table of contents**

2. An adjustments budget and supporting documentation must commence with a table of contents and show the relevant headings in the sequence set out below –
  - *PART 1 – ADJUSTMENTS BUDGET*
    - Chairperson's report
    - Resolutions
    - Executive summary
    - Adjustments budget tables
  - *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*

---

<sup>42</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website.

- Adjustments to budget assumptions
- Adjustments to budget funding
- Adjustments to expenditure on allocations and grant programmes
- Adjustments to allocations and grants made by the municipal entity
- Adjustments to board member allowances and employee benefits
- Adjustments to the service delivery agreement and multi-year business plan
- Adjustments to capital expenditure
- Other supporting documentation
- Chief executive officer's quality certification

## **PART 1 – ADJUSTMENTS BUDGET**

### **Chairperson's report**

3. The chairperson's report accompanying an adjustments must provide –
- (a) a summary of the reasons for the adjustments budget having regard to the material variances highlighted in the latest monthly budget statement including at least the following where applicable –
    - (i) new allocations of cash backed accumulated funds;
    - (ii) multi-year funds shifting in relation to the capital programme;
    - (iii) unforeseen and unavoidable expenditure; and
    - (iv) parent municipality allocation adjustments;
  - (b) recommendation that the entity board approves the adjustments budget after the prior approval by the mayor;
  - (c) a recommendation that the entity approves the board of directors approves the revisions to the service delivery targets and performance indicators in the service delivery agreement, if applicable; and
  - (d) any other information considered relevant by the chairperson.

### **Resolutions**

4. Resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the adjustments budget document –
- (a) approval of the municipal entity's adjustments budget;

- (b) approval of any adjustments permitted in terms of regulation 61;
- (c) approval of revisions to the monthly and quarterly service delivery targets and performance indicators in the service delivery agreement, if any, to correspond with the approval of the adjustments budget; and
- (d) approval of any amendments to budget-related policies necessitated by the adjustments budget.

#### **Executive summary**

5. The executive summary must cover at least the following –
- (a) the effect of the adjustments budget on service delivery and the related financial implications making reference to the adjustments budget tables, charts and explanations;
  - (b) the effect of the adjustments budget on the provision of basic services; and
  - (c) the effect of the adjustments budget on the service delivery agreement, multi-year business plan and long-term sustainability of the municipal entity.

#### **Adjustments budget tables**

6. The adjustments budget tables must consist of the tables in the Attachment to this Schedule –
- (a) Table E1 Adjustments Budget Summary
  - (b) Table E2 Adjustments Budget - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
  - (c) Table E3 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding
  - (d) Table E4 Adjustments Budget - Financial Position
  - (e) Table E5 Adjustments Budget - Cash Flows
7. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.
8. If a municipal entity's operations are sufficiently complex, the parent municipality may stipulate additional requirements for the adjustments budget tables to ensure that adequate information is provided.

9. If a municipal entity's business operations extend across multiple municipal votes, the parent municipality must stipulate the provision of additional information needed to complete the necessary consolidation.

## **PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

### **Adjustments to budget assumptions**

10. Provide a description of any adjustments made to the budget assumptions presented in the annual budget.

### **Adjustments to budget funding**

11. The disclosure on adjustments to budget funding must include at least the following where applicable –

- (a) a narrative summary of the impact of the adjustments budget on –
  - (i) the funding of operating and capital expenditure;
  - (ii) financial plans;
  - (iii) reserves; and
  - (iv) the financial sustainability of the municipal entity;
- (b) a reconciliation showing that operating and capital expenditure remain funded in accordance with section 18 of the Act;
- (c) adjustments to debtors collection levels estimated;
- (d) any adjustments to the municipal entity's monetary investments by –
  - (i) type; and
  - (ii) maturity date;
- (e) any adjustments to contributions and donations in cash or in-kind specifically listing donor assistance secured by formal agreement or contract;
- (f) adjustments related to proceeds from the sale of assets;
- (g) adjustments related to proceeds from the lease of assets, where the period of the lease is three years or more;
- (h) adjustments related to the planned use of previous years' cash backed accumulated surplus including –



- (i) any shortfall between liabilities or provisions and cash reserves set aside for this purpose;
  - (ii) board decisions to set aside funds including a time schedules for progressively meeting funding of provisions;
  - (iii) allowances made for working; and
  - (iv) non-statutory reserves;
- (i) adjustments related to new proposed borrowing to be raised in the budget year; and
- (j) adjustments related to allocations and grants from the parent municipality or other donors.

**Adjustments to expenditure on allocations and grant programmes**

12. Provide a summary of any adjustments made to planned expenditure of allocations and grants received.

**Adjustments to allocations made by the municipal entity**

13. Provide a summary of any adjustments made to allocations, grants or dividends or other distributions made by the municipal entity, including any to the parent municipality.

**Adjustments to board member allowances and employee benefits**

14. Provide details of any adjustments made to board member and employee benefits.

**Adjustments to service delivery agreement and multi-year business plan**

15. Provide details of any adjustments to quarterly service delivery targets and performance indicators in the plan.

16. Provide a summary of any adjustments made to the key financial indicators presented in the annual budget.

17. Provide details of any adjustments to monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow.

18. Provide explanations for the adjustments referred to in (15), (16) and (17) referring to the relevant monthly budget statement where appropriate.

**Adjustments to capital expenditure**

19. The disclosure on adjustments to the capital programme must provide at least –

- (a) a summary of adjustments to capital expenditure by class and sub-class; and
- (b) a list of adjusted capital programmes and projects aligned to the goals of the Integrated Development Plan of the municipality.

**Other supporting documents**

20. A municipal entity must add to its adjustments budget documents any supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the impact of the adjustments budget on service delivery and the state of financial affairs of the municipal entity.

**Chief executive officer's quality certification**

21. an adjustments budget and supporting documentation must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below:

**Quality certificate**

I, ....., chief executive officer of .....(name of municipal entity, hereby certify that the adjustments budget and supporting documentation have been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and the regulations made under the Act, and that the adjustments budget and supporting documentation are consistent with the business plan of the entity, the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality and the Integrated Development Plan of the parent municipality.

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Chief executive officer of .....(name of municipal entity)

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

## SCHEDULE F

### IN-YEAR REPORTS OF MUNICIPAL ENTITIES

#### Format and content of in-year reports

1. An in-year report of a municipal entity must have all the headings in the sequence shown in the table of contents below, contain the information described in this Schedule and be appropriately page numbered, taking into account any guidelines issued by the Minister in terms of section 168(1) of the Act.<sup>43</sup>

#### Table of contents

2. An in-year report must commence with a table of contents and show the headings in the sequence set out below –

- *PART 1 – IN-YEAR REPORT*
  - Chairperson's Report (*required if tabled to board*)
  - Resolutions (*required if tabled to board*)
  - Executive summary
  - In-year budget statement tables
- *PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION*
  - Debtors' analysis
  - Creditors' analysis
  - Investment portfolio analysis
  - Allocation and grant receipts and expenditure
  - Board member allowances and employee benefits
  - Material variances to the service delivery agreement and multi year business plan
  - Capital programme performance
  - Other supporting documents
  - Chief executive officer's quality certification

---

<sup>43</sup> See *MFMA Budget Formats Guide* published on the National Treasury's website..

## PART 1 – IN-YEAR REPORT

### Chairperson's report

3. The chairperson's report accompanying an in-year report must provide –
- (a) a summary of whether the municipal entity's budget is being implemented in accordance with the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality and the multi-year business plan of the entity;
  - (b) a summary of any financial problems or risks facing the municipal entity; and
  - (c) any other information considered relevant by the chairperson.
4. For the mid-year budget and performance assessment, the chairperson's report must also provide –
- (a) a summary of the past year's annual report, and progress on resolving problems identified in the annual report and audit report;
  - (b) a summary of any financial or service delivery implications for the parent municipality; and
  - (c) a recommendation as to whether an adjustments budget for the municipal entity is necessary.

### Resolutions

5. If an in-year report is presented to the board, resolutions dealing with at least the following matters must be prepared and presented as part of the documentation –
- (a) receiving the in-year report and any supporting documents;
  - (b) noting of the submission of the in-year report to the municipal manager of the parent municipality; and
  - (c) any other resolutions that may be required.

### Executive summary

6. The executive summary must cover at least the following –
- (a) the municipal entity's performance, in relation to both the approved annual budget and the latest approved adjustments budget making reference to the in-year report tables, charts and explanations;

- (b) any material variances from the service delivery agreement with the parent municipality and the multi-year business plan of the entity; and
- (c) any remedial or corrective steps taken or to be taken to ensure that projected revenue and expenditure remain within the municipal entity's budget.

7. The executive summary of the mid-year budget and performance assessment, in addition to the information in (6), also include a summary of –

- (a) the municipal entity's performance in implementing the service delivery agreement referring to actual service delivery achieved compared with the quarterly targets and an explanation of any variances, and taking into account performance in relation to both the approved annual budget and the latest adjustments budget;
- (b) the performance in relation to the quarterly performance targets for the delivery of basic services; and
- (c) the financial impact of the performance to date on the multi year business plan and long term sustainability of the municipal entity.

#### **In-year budget statement tables**

8. The in-year budget statement tables must consist of the tables in the Attachment to this Schedule, namely –

- (a) Table F1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary
- (b) Table F2 Monthly Budget Statement – Financial Performance revenue and expenditure)
- (c) Table F3 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure
- (d) Table F4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
- (e) Table F5 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flows

9. Supporting information, charts and explanations of trends and anomalies must be presented for each table where such presentation will assist with understanding the information contained in the tables.

10. If a municipal entity's operations are sufficiently complex, the parent municipality may stipulate additional requirements for the in-year budget statement tables to ensure that adequate information is provided.

11. If a municipal entity's business operations extend across multiple municipal votes, the parent municipality must stipulate the provision of additional information needed to complete the necessary consolidation.

## **PART 2 – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION**

### **Debtors' analysis**

12. The debtors' analysis must contain the following;
- (a) an aged analysis reconciled with the financial position grouped by -
    - (i) revenue source; and
    - (ii) customer group; and
  - (b) any bad debts written off by customer group.

### **Creditors' analysis**

13. The creditors' analysis must contain an aged analysis by customer type reconciled with the financial position.

### **Investment portfolio analysis**

14. The investment portfolio analysis must include information consistent with the requirements of the Municipal Investment Regulations, 2005.

### **Allocations, grants receipt and expenditure**

15. The disclosure on allocation and grant receipts and expenditure must reflect particulars of –
- (a) allocation and grant receipts and expenditure against each allocation or grant; and
  - (b) any change in allocations as a result of an adjustments budget of the parent municipality, and changes in grants from other providers.

**Board member allowances and employee benefits**

16. The disclosure on board member allowances and employee benefits must include a comparison of actual expenditure and budgeted expenditure

- (a) board member allowances; and
- (b) employee benefits.

**Material variances to the service delivery agreement and multi year business plan**

17. In the monthly financial statements provide a disclosure on monthly targets for revenue, expenditure and cash flow that includes a projection of cash flow for the budget year setting out receipts by source and payments by type, per month for the budget year with actual for past months and revised forecasts for future months, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year.

18. In the mid-year budget and performance assessment provide –

- (a) a review of actual performance against the quarterly targets for measurable performance objectives and service delivery;
- (b) a projection of revenue and operating expenditure per month for the budget year with actual for past months and revised forecasts for future months, and the total for the two years following the budget year;
- (c) a projection of capital expenditure by project broken down per month for the budget year showing actual for past periods and revised forecasts for future periods, and shown in total for the two years following the budget year; and
- (d) an explanation of the cause of variations from the approved annual budget and the impact on any contractual agreements and the overall budget, if any.

19. Where items 17 and 18 indicate a material variance between the actual year-to-date performance compared with the monthly or quarterly targets from the service delivery agreement and multi-year business plan, provide explanations for such variances and indicate the likely impact on annual performance agreements of the chief executive officer and senior managers.

**Capital programme performance**

20. The disclosure on capital programme performance must include at least –

- (a) capital expenditure by month; and
- (b) a summary of capital expenditure by asset class and sub-class.

**Other supporting documents**

21. A municipal entity must add to its in-year report any supporting documents not covered in this Schedule if such documents are necessary to fully explain the review of actual service delivery and financial performance compared to the approved annual budget and the latest approved adjustments budget.

**Chief executive officer's quality certification**

22. An in-year report must be covered by a quality certificate in the format described below:

**Quality certificate**

I, ....., chief executive officer of .....(name of municipal entity), hereby certify that

(mark as appropriate)

- ☐ the monthly budget statement
- ☐ mid-year budget and performance assessment

for the month of ..... of ..... has been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Finance Management Act and regulations made under that Act.

Print name \_\_\_\_\_

Chief executive officer of \_\_\_\_\_ (name of municipal entity)

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_



## SCHEDULE G

### EXTENSIONS AND NON-COMPLIANCE WITH TIME PROVISIONS

APPLICATION FOR EXTENSION TO THE BUDGET PROCESS			
<i>Note: The application must be submitted to the MEC for finance by no later than 15 March</i>			
Name	of		
Municipality:			
<b>1. State the relevant section of the Act and regulation for which extension is being applied.</b>			
<b>2. State the revised completion date the extension is required.</b>			
Processes	Legislated date	Number of days	Proposed Extension Date
<b>3. State how the proposed extension will affect the remaining legislated process and how compliance will be achieved with other MFMA timelines</b>			
<b>4. State the underlying reasons why an extension to a legislated timeframe is being requested. If the extension is requested for budget timeline extension, attach the municipalities approved time schedule including the dates that earlier processes have been undertaken.</b>			
<b>5. Detail the action plan that has been instituted to address the reasons for the legislated timeframe not being met.</b>			
Reasons for delay	Action Plans to resolve		
<b>6. Detail what corrective action has been or will be put in place to prevent a recurrence in future years.</b>			
Reasons for delay	Action Plans to resolve		

7. Has an application for an extension to a timeframe been made previously	
Date of application	State whether application approved or not approved

**Declaration:**

I, \_\_\_\_\_ hereby declare that: (Name)

1. The information submitted above is, to the best of my knowledge, accurate.
2. A copy of this application will be tabled at the next meeting of the Municipal Council subsequent to the submission of this application.

**SIGNED:****DATE:**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Mayor

**CONTACT DETAILS:**

Mayor's Office Contact Details			
Name of contact person:			
Telephone:	Code (    )	Fax:	
Municipal Manager Contact Details			
Name:			
Telephone:	Code (    )	Fax:	
Municipality's Postal Address			
Postal Code			

## **Attachments to Schedules**

### **SCHEDULE A – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

- (k) Table A1 Budget Summary
- (l) Table A2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)
- (m) Table A3 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (n) Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (o) Table A5 Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding
- (p) Table A6 Budgeted Financial Position
- (q) Table A7 Budgeted Cash Flows
- (r) Table A8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (s) Table A9 Asset Management
- (t) Table A10 Basic service delivery measurement

### **SCHEDULE A – SECOND ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table A1 Consolidated Budget Summary
- (b) Table A2 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)
- (c) Table A3 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table A4 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table A5 Consolidated Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding
- (f) Table A6 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Position
- (g) Table A7 Consolidated Budgeted Cash Flows
- (h) Table A8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

- (i) Table A9 Consolidated Asset Management
- (j) Table A10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

#### **SCHEDULE B – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table B1 Adjustments Budget Summary
- (b) Table B2 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)
- (c) Table B3 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table B4 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table B5 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding
- (f) Table B6 Adjustments Budget Financial Position
- (g) Table B7 Adjustments Budget Cash Flows
- (h) Table B8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (i) Table B9 Asset Management
- (j) Table B10 Basic service delivery measurement

#### **SCHEDULE B – SECOND ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table B1 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Summary
- (b) Table B2 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)
- (c) Table B3 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table B4 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table B5 Consolidated Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding
- (f) Table B6 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Position
- (g) Table B7 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Cash Flows
- (h) Table B8 Consolidated cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation
- (i) Table B9 Consolidated Asset Management

- (j) Table B10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

#### **SCHEDULE C – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table C1 s71 Monthly Budget Statement Summary
- (b) Table C2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)
- (c) Table C3 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table C4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table C5 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)
- (f) Table C6 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
- (g) Table C7 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

#### **SCHEDULE C – SECOND ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table C1 s71 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement Summary
- (b) Table C2 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)
- (c) Table C3 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)
- (d) Table C4 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (e) Table C5 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)
- (f) Table C6 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
- (g) Table C7 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

#### **SCHEDULE D – ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table D1 Budget Summary
- (b) Table D2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (c) Table D3 Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding

- (d) Table D4 Budgeted Financial Position
- (e) Table D5 Budgeted Cash Flows

#### **SCHEDULE E – ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table E1 Adjustments Budget Summary
- (b) Table E2 Adjustments Budget - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (c) Table E3 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding
- (d) Table E4 Adjustments Budget - Financial Position
- (e) Table E5 Adjustments Budget - Cash Flows

#### **SCHEDULE F – ATTACHMENT**

- (a) Table F1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary
- (b) Table F2 Monthly Budget Statement – Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- (c) Table F3 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure
- (d) Table F4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position
- (e) Table F5 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flows

## **SCHEDULE A – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

(a) **Table A1 Budget Summary**

**Schedule A1 - Table A1 Budget Summary**[illegible]



## (b) Table A2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)

Schedule A1 - Table A2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)

Standard Classification Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other	4									
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other	4									
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
2. Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
3. Total Expenditure by Standard Classification must reconcile to Total Operating Expenditure shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
4. All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abattoirs, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification

## (c) Table A3 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule A1 - Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule A1 - Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (Revenue and Expenditure by municipal vote)										
Vote Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
R thousand										
Revenue by Vote	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Revenue by Vote	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Expenditure by Vote to be appropriated	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Expenditure by Vote	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Surplus/(Deficit) for the year	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Insert 'Vote', e.g. department, if different to standard classification structure

2. Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

3. Assign share in 'associate' to relevant Vote

## (d) Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule A1 - Table A4 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Revenue By Source</b>										
Property rates	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Property rates - penalties & collection charges										
Service charges - electricity revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - water revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - refuse revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - other										
Rental of facilities and equipment										
Interest earned - external investments										
Interest earned - outstanding debtors										
Dividends received										
Fines										
Licences and permits										
Agency services										
Transfers recognised - operational										
Other revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gains on disposal of PPE										
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>										
Employee related costs	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Remuneration of councillors										
Debt impairment	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance charges										
Bulk purchases	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other materials	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contracted services										
Transfers and grants										
Other expenditure	4, 5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Loss on disposal of PPE										
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital										
Contributions recognised - capital	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contributed assets										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Taxation										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Attributable to minorities										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Classifications are revenue sources and expenditure type

2. Detail to be provided in Table SA1

3. Previously described as 'bad or doubtful debts' - amounts shown should reflect the change in the provision for debt impairment

4. Expenditure type components previously shown under repairs and maintenance should be allocated back to the originating expenditure group/item; e.g. employee costs

5. Repairs &amp; maintenance detailed in Table A9 and Table SA34c

6. Contributions are funds provided by external organisations to assist with infrastructure development; e.g. developer contributions (detail to be provided in Table SA1)

7. Equity method

8. All materials not part of 'bulk' e.g. road making materials, pipe, cable etc.

## (e) Table A5 Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding

Schedule A1 - Table A5 Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding

Vote Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Capital expenditure - Vote</b>										
<b>Multi-year expenditure to be appropriated</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single-year expenditure to be appropriated</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Vote</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provincial Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
District Municipality		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other transfers and grants		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Transfers recognised - capital</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Public contributions &amp; donations</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Borrowing</b>	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Internally generated funds</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

- Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3).
- Include capital component of PPP unitary payment. Note that capital transfers are only appropriated to municipalities for the budget year.
- Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the appropriations by vote.
- Must reconcile to supporting table SA20 and to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure).
- Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure).
- Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment - total borrowing/repayments to reconcile to changes in Table SA17.
- Total Capital Funding must balance with Total Capital Expenditure.
- Include any capitalised interest (MFMA section 46) as part of relevant capital budget.

## (f) Table A6 Budgeted Financial Position

Schedule A1 - Table A6 Budgeted Financial Position

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>ASSETS</b>										
<b>Current assets</b>										
Cash		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Call investment deposits	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Consumer debtors	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other debtors										
Current portion of long-term receivables										
Inventory	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>										
Long-term receivables										
Investments										
Investment property										
Investment in Associate										
Property, plant and equipment	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural										
Biological										
Intangible										
Other non-current assets										
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>										
<b>Current liabilities</b>										
Bank overdraft	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Borrowing	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Consumer deposits										
Trade and other payables	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provisions										
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>										
Borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>										
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)										
Reserves	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Minorities' interests										
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Detail to be provided in Table SA3

2. Include completed low cost housing to be transferred to beneficiaries within 12 months

3. Include 'Construction-work-in-progress' (disclosed separately in annual financial statements)

4. Detail to be provided in Table SA3. Includes reserves to be funded by statute.

5. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

## (g) Table A7 Budgeted Cash Flows

Schedule A1 - Table A7 Budgeted Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Ratepayers and other										
Government - operating	1									
Government - capital	1									
Interest										
Dividends										
<b>Payments</b>										
Suppliers and employees										
Finance charges										
Transfers and Grants	1									
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE										
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors										
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables										
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments										
<b>Payments</b>										
Capital assets										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Short term loans										
Borrowing long term/refinancing										
Increase in consumer deposits										
<b>Payments</b>										
Repayment of borrowing										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin:	2									
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end:	2									

References

1. Local/District municipalities to include transfers from/to District/Local Municipalities  
 2. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less

## (h) Table A8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Schedule A1 - Table A8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>Cash and investments available</b>										
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other current investments > 90 days		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current assets - Investments	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash and investments available:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Application of cash and investments</b>										
Unspent conditional transfers		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Unspent borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Statutory requirements	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other working capital requirements	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Long term investments committed	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Reserves to be backed by cash/investments	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Application of cash and investments:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus(shortfall)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Must reconcile with Budgeted Cash Flows
2. For example: VAT, taxation
3. Council approval for policy required - include sufficient working capital (e.g. allowing for a % of current debtors > 90 days as uncollectable)
4. For example: sinking fund requirements for borrowing
5. Council approval required for each reserve created and basis of cash backing of reserves

## (i) Table A9 Asset Management

Schedule A1 - Table A9 Asset Management

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 3
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>CAPITAL EXPENDITURE</b>										
<b>Total New Assets</b>	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Renewal of Existing Assets</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL CAPITAL EXPENDITURE - Asset class</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Depreciation &amp; asset impairment</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>% of capital exp on renewal of assets</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal of Existing Assets as % of deprecn</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal and R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%

## References

- Detail of new assets provided in Table SA34a
- Detail of renewal of existing assets provided in Table SA34b
- Detail of Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class provided in Table SA34c
- Must reconcile to total capital expenditure on Budgeted Capital Expenditure
- Must reconcile to 'Budgeted Financial Position' (written down value)
- Donated/contributed and assets funded by finance leases to be allocated to the respective category



## (j) Table A10 Basic service delivery measurement

Schedule A1 - Table A10 Basic service delivery measurement

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Outcome	Outcome	Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>Household service targets (R00)</b>	1									
<b>Water:</b>										
Piped water inside dwelling										
Piped water inside yard (but not in dwelling)										
Using public tap (at least min. service level)	2									
Other water supply (at least min. service level)	4									
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Using public tap (< min. service level)	3									
Other water supply (< min. service level)	4									
No water supply										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total number of households	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Sanitation/sewerage:</b>										
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage)										
Flush toilet (with septic tank)										
Chemical toilet										
Pit latrine (ventilated or not)										
Other toilet provisions - list type separately										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bucket latrine										
Other toilet provisions (list, < min. service level)										
No toilet provisions										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total number of households	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Energy:</b>										
Electricity (at least minimum service level)										
Electricity - prepaid (min. service level)										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity (< min. service level)										
Electricity - prepaid (< min. service level)										
Other energy sources										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total number of households	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Refuse:</b>										
Removed at least once a week										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Removed less frequently than once a week										
Using communal refuse dump										
Using own refuse dump										
Other rubbish disposal										
No rubbish disposal										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total number of households	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Households receiving Free Basic Service</b>	7									
Water (5 kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (free minimum level service)										
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (removed at least once a week)										
<b>Cost of Free Basic Services provided (R'000)</b>	8									
Water (5 kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (free sanitation service)										
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (removed once a week)										
Total cost of FBS provided (minimum social package)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Highest level of free service provided</b>										
Property rates (R'000 value threshold)										
Water (kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (Rand per household per month)										
Electricity (kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (average litres per week)										
<b>Revenue cost of free services provided (R'000)</b>	9									
Property rates (R15 000 threshold rebate)										
Property rates (other exemptions, reductions and rebates)										
Water										
Sanitation										
Electricity/other energy										
Refuse										
Municipal Housing - rental rebates										
Housing - top structure subsidies	6									
Other										
Total revenue cost of free services provided (total social package)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Include services provided by another entity; e.g. Eskom
2. Stand distance <= 200m from dwelling
3. Stand distance > 200m from dwelling
4. Borehole, spring, rain-water tank etc.
5. Must agree to total number of households in municipal area
6. Include value of subsidy provided by municipality above provincial subsidy level
7. Show number of households receiving at least these levels of services completely free
8. Must reflect the cost to the municipality of providing the Free Basic Service
9. Reflect the cost to the municipality in terms of 'revenue foregone' of providing free services (note this will not equal 'Revenue Foregone' on SA1)

## **SCHEDULE A – SECOND ATTACHMENT**



(b) Table A2 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)

Schedule A2 - Table A2 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by standard classification)

Standard Classification Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other	4									
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	<b>2</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other	4									
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	<b>3</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

- Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
- Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- Total Expenditure by Standard Classification must reconcile to Total Operating Expenditure shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abattoirs, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification

## (c) Table A3 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule A2 - Table A3 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Vote Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>Revenue by Vote</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure by Vote to be appropriated</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) for the year</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Insert 'Vote'; e.g. department, if different to standard classification structure  
 2. Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)  
 3. Assign share in 'associate' to relevant Vote

## (d) Table A4 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule A2 - Table A4 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year + 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Revenue By Source</b>										
Property rates	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Property rates - penalties & collection charges										
Service charges - electricity revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - water revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - refuse revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges - other										
Rental of facilities and equipment										
Interest earned - external investments										
Interest earned - outstanding debtors										
Dividends received										
Fines										
Licences and permits										
Agency services										
Transfers recognised - operational										
Other revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gains on disposal of PPE										
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>										
Employee related costs	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Remuneration of councillors										
Debt impairment	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance charges										
Bulk purchases	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other materials	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contracted services										
Transfers and grants										
Other expenditure	4, 5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Loss on disposal of PPE										
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>										
Transfers recognised - capital										
Contributions recognised - capital	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contributed assets										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>										
Taxation										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation</b>										
Attributable to minorities										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality</b>										
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Classifications are revenue sources and expenditure type
2. Detail to be provided in Table SA1
3. Previously described as 'bad or doubtful debts' - amounts shown should reflect the change in the provision for debt impairment
4. Expenditure type components previously shown under repairs and maintenance should be allocated back to the originating expenditure group/item; e.g. employee costs
5. Repairs & maintenance detailed in Table A9 and Table SA34c
6. Contributions are funds provided by external organisations to assist with infrastructure development; e.g. developer contributions (detail to be provided in Table SA1)
7. Equity method
8. All materials not part of 'bulk' e.g. road making materials, pipe, cable etc.

## (e) Table A5 Consolidated Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding

Schedule A2 - Table A5 Consolidated Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote, standard classification and funding

Vote Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Capital expenditure - Vote</b>										
<b>Multi-year expenditure to be appropriated</b>	<b>2</b>									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>	<b>7</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single-year expenditure to be appropriated</b>	<b>2</b>									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Vote</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other										
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>	<b>3</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government										
Provincial Government										
District Municipality										
Other transfers and grants										
<b>Transfers recognised - capital</b>	<b>4</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Public contributions &amp; donations</b>	<b>5</b>									
<b>Borrowing</b>	<b>6</b>									
<b>Internally generated funds</b>										
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>	<b>7</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3).
2. Include capital component of PPP unitary payment. Note that capital transfers are only appropriated to municipalities for the budget year.
3. Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the appropriations by vote.
4. Must reconcile to supporting table SA20 and to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure).
5. Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure).
6. Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment - total borrowing/repayments to reconcile to changes in Table SA17.
7. Total Capital Funding must balance with Total Capital Expenditure.
8. Include any capitalised interest (MFMA section 46) as part of relevant capital budget.

## (f) Table A6 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Position

Schedule A2 - Table A6 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Position

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>ASSETS</b>										
<b>Current assets</b>										
Cash										
Call investment deposits	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Consumer debtors	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other debtors										
Current portion of long-term receivables										
Inventory	2									
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>										
Long-term receivables										
Investments										
Investment property										
Investment in Associate										
Property, plant and equipment	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural										
Biological										
Intangible										
Other non-current assets										
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>										
<b>Current liabilities</b>										
Bank overdraft	1									
Borrowing	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Consumer deposits										
Trade and other payables	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provisions										
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>										
Borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>										
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)										
Reserves	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Minorities' interests										
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Detail to be provided in Table SA3

2. Include completed low cost housing to be transferred to beneficiaries within 12 months

3. Include 'Construction work-in-progress' (disclosed separately in annual financial statements)

4. Detail to be provided in Table SA3. Includes reserves to be funded by statute.

5. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity



## (g) Table A7 Consolidated Budgeted Cash Flows

Schedule A2 - Table A7 Consolidated Budgeted Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Ratepayers and other										
Government - operating	1									
Government - capital	1									
Interest										
Dividends										
<b>Payments</b>										
Suppliers and employees										
Finance charges										
Transfers and Grants	1									
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE										
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors										
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables										
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments										
<b>Payments</b>										
Capital assets										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Short term loans										
Borrowing long term/refinancing										
Increase in consumer deposits										
<b>Payments</b>										
Repayment of borrowing										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin:	2									
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end:	2									

References

1. Local/District municipalities to include transfers from/to District/Local Municipalities
2. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less

## (h) Table A8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Schedule A2 - Table A8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>Cash and investments available</b>										
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other current investments > 90 days		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current assets - investments	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash and investments available:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Application of cash and investments</b>										
Unspent conditional transfers		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Unspent borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Statutory requirements	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other working capital requirements	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Long term investments committed	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Reserves to be backed by cash/investments	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Application of cash and investments:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus(shortfall)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Must reconcile with Budgeted Cash Flows
2. For example: VAT, taxation
3. Council approval for policy required - include sufficient working capital (e.g. allowing for a % of current debtors > 90 days as uncollectable)
4. For example: sinking fund requirements for borrowing
5. Council approval required for each reserve created and basis of cash backing of reserves

## (i) Table A9 Consolidated Asset Management

Schedule A2 - Table A9 Consolidated Asset Management

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousand</b>										
<b>CAPITAL EXPENDITURE</b>										
<b>Total New Assets</b>	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Renewal of Existing Assets</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL CAPITAL EXPENDITURE - Asset class</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5									
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural Assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Biological assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Intangibles		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>										
<b>Depreciation &amp; asset impairment</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Sanitation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure - Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Infrastructure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Heritage assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment properties		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other assets		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>% of capital exp on renewal of assets</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal of Existing Assets as % of deprecn</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal and R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%

## References

1. Detail of new assets provided in Table SA34a
2. Detail of renewal of existing assets provided in Table SA34b
3. Detail of Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class provided in Table SA34c
4. Must reconcile to total capital expenditure on Budgeted Capital Expenditure
5. Must reconcile to 'Budgeted Financial Position' (written down value)
6. Donated/contributed and assets funded by finance leases to be allocated to the respective category

## (j) Table A10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

Schedule A2 - Table A10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Outcome	Outcome	Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 2
<b>Household service targets (000)</b>	1									
<b>Water:</b>										
Piped water inside dwelling										
Piped water inside yard (but not in dwelling)										
Using public tap (at least min service level)	2									
Other water supply (at least min service level)	4									
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total										
Using public tap (< min service level)	3									
Other water supply (< min service level)	4									
No water supply										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total										
Total number of households	5									
<b>Sanitation/sewerage:</b>										
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage)										
Flush toilet (with septic tank)										
Chemical toilet										
Pit latrine (ventilated or not)										
Other toilet provisions - list type separately										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total										
Bucket latrine										
Other toilet provisions (list, < min service level)										
No toilet provisions										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total										
Total number of households	5									
<b>Energy:</b>										
Electricity (at least minimum service level)										
Electricity - prepaid (min service level)										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total										
Electricity (< min service level)										
Electricity - prepaid (< min service level)										
Other energy sources										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total										
Total number of households	5									
<b>Refuse:</b>										
Removed at least once a week										
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total										
Removed less frequently than once a week										
Using communal refuse dump										
Using own refuse dump										
Other rubbish disposal										
No rubbish disposal										
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total										
Total number of households	5									
<b>Households receiving Free Basic Service</b>	7									
Water (6 kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (free minimum level service)										
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (removed at least once a week)										
<b>Cost of Free Basic Services provided (R'000)</b>	8									
Water (6 kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (free sanitation service)										
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (removed once a week)										
Total cost of FBS provided (minimum social package)										
<b>Highest level of free service provided</b>										
Property rates (R'000 value threshold)										
Water (kilolitres per household per month)										
Sanitation (kilolitres per household per month)										
Electricity (kwh per household per month)										
Refuse (average litres per week)										
<b>Revenue cost of free services provided (R'000)</b>	9									
Property rates (R'15 000 threshold rebate)										
Property rates (other exemptions, reductions and rebates)										
Water										
Sanitation										
Electricity/other energy										
Refuse										
Municipal Housing - rental rebates										
Housing - top structure subsidies										
Other										
Total revenue cost of free services provided (total social p	6									

## References

1. Include services provided by another entity, e.g. Eskom

2. Stand distance &lt;= 200m from dwelling

3. Stand distance &gt; 200m from dwelling

4. Borehole, spring, rain water tank etc.

5. Must agree to total number of households in municipal area

6. Include value of subsidy provided by municipality above provincial subsidy level

7. Show number of households receiving at least these levels of services completely free

8. Must reflect the cost to the municipality of providing the Free Basic Service

9. Reflect the cost to the municipality in terms of 'revenue foregone' of providing free services (note this will not equal 'Revenue Foregone' on SA1)

## **SCHEDULE B – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

## (a) Table B1 Adjustments Budget Summary

Schedule B1 - Table B1 Adjustments Budget Summary

Description	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
	Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 1	Accum. Funds 2	Multi-year capital 3	Unfore. Unavoid. 4	Nat. or Prov. Govt 5	Other Adjusts. 6	Total Adjusts. 7	Adjusted Budget 8	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>Financial Performance</b>											
Property sales	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment revenue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - operational	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other own revenue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Employee costs	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Remuneration of councillors	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance charges	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Materials and bulk purchases	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers and grants	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other expenditure	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contributions recognised - capital & contributed assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital expenditure &amp; funds sources</b>											
<b>Capital expenditure</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public contributions & donations	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Borrowing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Internally generated funds	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total sources of capital funds</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Financial position</b>											
Total current assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total non current assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total current liabilities	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total non current liabilities	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community wealth/Equity	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash flows</b>											
Net cash from (used) operating	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash from (used) investing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash from (used) financing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash/cash equivalents at the year end</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash backing/surplus reconciliation</b>											
Cash and investments available	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Application of cash and investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Balance - surplus (shortfall)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Asset Management</b>											
Asset register summary (WDV)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Renewal of Existing Assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Repairs and Maintenance	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Free services</b>											
Cost of Free Basic Services provided	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Revenue cost of free services provided	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Households below minimum service level</b>											
Water	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sanitation/sewerage	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Energy	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Refuse	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
2. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
3. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
4. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
5. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
6. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))
7.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$
8. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (b) Table B2 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)

Schedule B1 - Table B2 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)

Standard Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	1, 4	A	5 A1	6 B	7 C	8 D	9 E	10 F	11 G	12 H		
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>												
Governance and administration		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council												
Budget and treasury office												
Corporate services												
Community and public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services												
Sport and recreation												
Public safety												
Housing												
Health												
Economic and environmental services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development												
Road transport												
Environmental protection												
Trading services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity												
Water												
Waste water management												
Waste management												
Other												
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>												
Governance and administration		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council												
Budget and treasury office												
Corporate services												
Community and public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services												
Sport and recreation												
Public safety												
Housing												
Health												
Economic and environmental services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development												
Road transport												
Environmental protection												
Trading services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity												
Water												
Waste water management												
Waste management												
Other												
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

- Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardized to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
- Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in the Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- Total Operating Expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Expenditure shown in the Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abbatoirs, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification
- Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
- Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
- Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
- Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
- Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
- Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved; including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))
- $G = B + C + D + E + F$
- Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (c) Table B3 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule B1 - Table B3 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Vote Description <small>[insert departmental structure etc]</small>	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 3	Accum. Funds 4	Multi-year capital 5	Unfore. Unavoid. 6	Nat. or Prov. Govt 7	Other Adjusts. 8	Total Adjusts. 9	Adjusted Budget 10	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>Revenue by Vote</b>	1											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
<b>Total Revenue by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure by Vote</b>	1											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**Notes:**

1. Insert 'Vote', e.g. Department, if different to standard classification structure

2. Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget.

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 16(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 10. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$



**(d) Table B4 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)**

Schedule B1 - Table B4 Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Net. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	1	A	3 A1	4 B	5 C	6 D	7 E	8 F	9 G	10 H		
<b>Revenue By Source</b>												
Property rates	2								-	-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges									-	-		
Service charges - electricity revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - water revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - refuse revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Rental of facilities and equipment									-	-		
Interest earned - external investments									-	-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors									-	-		
Dividends received									-	-		
Fines									-	-		
Licences and permits									-	-		
Agency services									-	-		
Transfers recognised - operating									-	-		
Other revenue	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gains on disposal of PPE									-	-		
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>												
Employee related costs		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Remuneration of councillors									-	-		
Debt impairment									-	-		
Depreciation & asset impairment		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance charges									-	-		
Bulk purchases		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other materials									-	-		
Contracted services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers and grants									-	-		
Other expenditure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Loss on disposal of PPE									-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital									-	-		
Contributions									-	-		
Contributed assets									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) before taxation</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Taxation									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Attributable to minorities									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate									-	-		
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Classifications are revenue sources and expenditure type

2. Detail to be provided in Table SB1

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 15(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (e) Table B5 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding

Schedule B1 - Table B5 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding

Description	Ref	Budget Year										Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Net. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget		Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	5 A1	6 B	7 C	8 D	9 E	10 F	11 G	12 H			
<b>R Thousands</b>													
<b>Capital expenditure - Vote</b>													
<b>Multi-year expenditure to be adjusted</b>	2												
Example 1 - Vote1													
Example 2 - Vote2													
Example 3 - Vote3													
Example 4 - Vote4													
Example 5 - Vote5													
Example 6 - Vote6													
Example 7 - Vote7													
Example 8 - Vote8													
Example 9 - Vote9													
Example 10 - Vote10													
Example 11 - Vote11													
Example 12 - Vote12													
Example 13 - Vote13													
Example 14 - Vote14													
Example 15 - Vote15													
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>	3												
<b>Single-year expenditure to be adjusted</b>	2												
Example 1 - Vote1													
Example 2 - Vote2													
Example 3 - Vote3													
Example 4 - Vote4													
Example 5 - Vote5													
Example 6 - Vote6													
Example 7 - Vote7													
Example 8 - Vote8													
Example 9 - Vote9													
Example 10 - Vote10													
Example 11 - Vote11													
Example 12 - Vote12													
Example 13 - Vote13													
Example 14 - Vote14													
Example 15 - Vote15													
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>													
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Vote</b>													
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>													
<b>Governance and administration</b>													
Executive and council													
Budget and treasury office													
Corporate services													
<b>Community and public safety</b>													
Community and social services													
Sport and recreation													
Public safety													
Housing													
Health													
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>													
Planning and development													
Road transport													
Environmental protection													
<b>Trading services</b>													
Electricity													
Water													
Waste water management													
Waste management													
Other													
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>	3												
<b>Funded by:</b>													
National Government													
Provincial Government													
District Municipality													
Other transfers and grants													
<b>Total Capital transfers recognised</b>	4												
<b>Public contributions &amp; donations</b>													
<b>Borrowing</b>													
<b>Internally generated funds</b>													
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>													

## References

1. Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year, appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3).
2. Include capital component of PPP unitary payment. Note that capital transfers are only appropriated to municipalities for the budget year.
3. Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the appropriations by vote.
4. Must reconcile to supporting table SBT and to Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure).
5. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget.
6. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen).
7. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31.
8. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29.
9. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government.
10. Adjusts = Other Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f)).
11.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$
12. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (f) Table B6 Adjustments Budget Financial Position

Schedule B1 - Table B6 Adjustments Budget Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year +1	Budget Year +2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt.	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	3 A1	4 B	5 C	6 D	7 E	8 F	9 G	10 H		
<b>R thousands</b>												
<b>ASSETS</b>												
<b>Current assets</b>												
Cash												
Call investment deposits	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Consumer deposits	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other debtors												
Current portion of long-term receivables												
Inventory												
<b>Total current assets</b>												
<b>Non current assets</b>												
Long-term receivables												
Investments												
Investment property												
Property, plant and equipment	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Agricultural												
Biological												
Intangible												
Other non-current assets												
<b>Total non current assets</b>												
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>												
<b>LIABILITIES</b>												
<b>Current liabilities</b>												
Bank overdraft												
Borrowing												
Consumer deposits												
Trade and other payables												
Provisions												
<b>Total current liabilities</b>												
<b>Non current liabilities</b>												
Borrowing	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provisions	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>												
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>												
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2											
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>												
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)												
Reserves												
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>												

References

1. Detail to be provided in Table SA3

2. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(a)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts: - Other Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 10. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (g) Table B7 Adjustments Budget Cash Flows

Schedule B1 - Table B7 Adjustments Budget Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 3 A1	Accum. Funds 4 B	Multi-year capital 5 C	Unfore. Unavoid. 6 D	Net. or Prov. Govt 7 E	Other Adjusts. 8 F	Total Adjusts. 9 G	Adjusted Budget 10 H	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
<b>R thousands</b>		<b>A</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>		
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Ratepayers and other									-	-		
Government - operating	1								-	-		
Government - capital	1								-	-		
Interest									-	-		
Dividends									-	-		
<b>Payments</b>												
Suppliers and employees									-	-		
Finance charges									-	-		
Transfers and Grants	1								-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Proceeds on disposal of PPE									-	-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors									-	-		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables									-	-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments									-	-		
<b>Payments</b>												
Capital assets									-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Short term loans									-	-		
Borrowing long term/financing									-	-		
Increase in consumer deposits									-	-		
<b>Payments</b>												
Repayment of borrowing									-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin	2								-	-		
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1 Local/District municipalities to include transfers from/to District/Local Municipalities

2 Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less

3 Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4 Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(a)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5 Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6 Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7 Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8 Adjusts = Other Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 

10 Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (h) Table B8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Schedule B1 - Table B8 Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts	Total Adjusts	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	3 A1	4 B	5 C	6 D	7 E	8 F	9 G	10 H		
<b>R thousands</b>												
<b>Cash and investments available</b>												
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other current investments > 90 days		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current assets - Investments	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash and investments available:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Applications of cash and investments</b>												
Unspent conditional transfers		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Unspent borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Statutory requirements		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other working capital requirements	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Long term investments committed		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Reserves to be backed by cash/investments		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Applications of cash and investments:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus(shortfall)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Must reconcile with the Adjustments Budget Cash Flow and Adjustments Budget Financial Position

2. Council approval for policy required - include sufficient working capital (e.g. allowing for a % of current debtors &gt; 90 days as uncollectable)

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc.) + G

## (i) Table B9 Asset Management

Schedule B1 - Table B9 Asset Management

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget A	Prior Adjusted 7 A1	Accum. Funds 8 B	Multi-year capital 9 C	Unfore. Unavoid. 10 D	Nat. or Prov. Govt 11 E	Other Adjusts 12 F	Total Adjusts. 13 G	Adjusted Budget 14 H	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
<b>R thousands</b>												
<b>CAPITAL EXPENDITURE</b>												
<b>Total New Assets to be adjusted</b>	1											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Infrastructure												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>Total Renewal of Existing Assets to be adjusted</b>	2											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Infrastructure												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>Total Capital Expenditure to be adjusted</b>	4											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Infrastructure												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>TOTAL CAPITAL EXPENDITURE to be adjusted</b>	2											
<b>ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (MOV)</b>	5											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Infrastructure												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Intangibles												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
<b>TOTAL ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (MOV)</b>	5											
<b>EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>												
<b>Depreciation &amp; asset impairment</b>												
<b>Repairs and Maintenance by asset class</b>	3											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Infrastructure												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS to be adjusted</b>	6											
<b>% of capital exp on renewal of assets</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal of existing assets as % of deprcn</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal and R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%

## References

- Detail of new assets provided in Table SA18a
- Detail of renewal of existing assets provided in Table SA18b
- Detail of Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class provided in Table SA18c
- Must reconcile to total capital expenditure on Budgeted Capital Expenditure
- Must reconcile to Adjustments Budget Financial Position (written down value)
- Donated/contributed and assets funded by finance leases to be allocated to the respective category
- Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget!
- Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(a)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
- Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
- Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
- Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
- Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))
- $G = B + C + D + E + F$
- Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (j) Table B10 Basic service delivery measurement

Schedule B1 - Table B10 Basic service delivery measurement

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year +1	Budget Year +2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Net. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	7 A1	8 B	9 C	10 D	11 E	12 F	13 G	14 H		
<b>Household service targets (000)</b>	1											
<b>Water:</b>												
Piped water inside dwelling												
Piped water inside yard (but not in dwelling)												
Using public tap (at least min service level)	2											
Other water supply (at least min service level)												
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total												
Using public tap (< min service level)	3											
Other water supply (< min service level)	3.4											
No water supply												
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total												
Total number of households	5											
<b>Sanitation/sewerage:</b>												
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage)												
Flush toilet (with septic tank)												
Chemical toilet												
Pit latrine (ventilated or not)												
Other toilet provisions - list type separately												
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total												
Bucket latrine												
Other toilet provisions (list, < min service level)												
No toilet provisions												
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total												
Total number of households	5											
<b>Energy:</b>												
Electricity (at least minimum service level)												
Electricity - prepaid (min service level)												
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total												
Electricity (< min service level)												
Electricity - prepaid (< min service level)												
Other energy sources												
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total												
Total number of households	5											
<b>Refuse:</b>												
Removed at least once a week (min service)												
Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total												
Removed less frequently than once a week												
Using communal refuse dump												
Using own refuse dump												
No rubbish disposal												
Below Minimum Service Level sub-total												
Total number of households	5											
<b>Households receiving Free Basic Service</b>	15											
Water (5 kilolites per household per month)												
Sanitation (free minimum level service)												
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)												
Refuse (removed at least once a week)												
<b>Cost of Free Basic Services provided (R'000)</b>	16											
Water (5 kilolites per household per month)												
Sanitation (free sanitation service)												
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)												
Refuse (removed once a week)												
Total cost of FBS provided (minimum social package)												
<b>Highest level of free service provided</b>												
Property rates (R100 value threshold)												
Water (kilolites per household per month)												
Sanitation (kilolites per household per month)												
Sanitation (Rand per household per month)												
Electricity (kw per household per month)												
Refuse (average litres per week)												
<b>Revenue cost of free services provided (R'000)</b>	17											
Property rates (R15 000 threshold rebate)												
Property rates (other exemptions, reductions and rebates)												
Water												
Sanitation												
Electricity/other energy												
Refuse												
Municipal housing - rental rebates												
Housing - top structure subsidies												
Other												
Total revenue cost of free services provided (total social p												

## References

1. Include services provided by another entity, e.g. Eskom

2. Stand distance &gt; 200m from dwelling

3. Stand distance &lt;= 200m from dwelling

4. Borehole, spring, rain-water tank etc.

5. Must agree to total number of households in municipal area

6. Include value of subsidy provided by municipality above provincial subsidy level

7. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

8. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

9. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

10. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

11. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

12. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

13. G = B + C + D + E + F

14. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

15. Show number of households receiving at least these levels of services completely free

16. Must reflect the cost to the municipality of providing the Free Basic Service

17. Reflect the cost to the municipality in terms of 'revenue foregone' of providing free services (note this will not equal 'Revenue foregone' on SA1)

## **SCHEDULE B – SECOND ATTACHMENT**



## (a) Table B1 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Summary

Schedule B2 - Table B1 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Summary

Description	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
	Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 1	Accum. Funds 2	Multi-year capital 3	Unfore. Unavoid. 4	Net. or Prov. Govt 5	Other Adjusts 6	Total Adjusts. 7	Adjusted Budget 8	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>Financial Performance</b>											
Property rates	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service charges	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Investment revenue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - operational	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other own revenue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Employee costs	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Remuneration of councillors	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance charges	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Materials and bulk purchases	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers and grants	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other expenditure	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Contributions recognised - capital & contributed assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital expenditure &amp; funds sources</b>											
<b>Capital expenditure</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public contributions & donations	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Borrowing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Internally generated funds	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total sources of capital funds</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Financial position</b>											
Total current assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total non current assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total current liabilities	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total non current liabilities	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community wealth/Equity	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash flows</b>											
Net cash from (used) operating	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash from (used) investing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash from (used) financing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash/cash equivalents at the year end</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash backlogs/surplus reconciliation</b>											
Cash and investments available	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Application of cash and investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Balance - surplus (shortfall)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Asset Management</b>											
Asset register summary (WDV)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Depreciation & asset impairment	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Renewal of Existing Assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Repairs and Maintenance	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Free services</b>											
Cost of Free Basic Services provided	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Revenue cost of free services provided	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Households below minimum service level</b>											
Water:	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sanitation/sewerage:	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Energy:	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Refuse:	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
2. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
3. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
4. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
5. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
6. Adjusts = "Other" Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))
7.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$
8. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (b) Table B2 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)

Schedule B2 - Table B2 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (standard classification)

Standard Description	Ref	Budget Year										Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts	Total Adjusts	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	1, 4	A	5 A1	6 B	7 C	8 D	9 E	10 F	11 G	12 H			
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>													
<b>Governance and administration</b>													
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>													
<b>Governance and administration</b>													
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>													

**References**

- Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
- Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in the Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- Total Operating Expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Expenditure shown in the Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
- All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abbots, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification
- Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
- Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 15(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
- Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
- Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
- Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
- Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(a)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))
- $G = B + C + D + E + F$
- Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (c) Table B3 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule B2 - Table B3 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Vote Description  (Insert departmental structure etc)	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	3 A1	4 B	5 C	6 D	7 E	8 F	9 G	10 H		
<b>Revenue by Vote</b>	1											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
<b>Total Revenue by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure by Vote</b>	1											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1 Insert 'Vote', e.g. Department, if different to standard classification structure

2 Must reconcile to Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

3 Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4 Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5 Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6 Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7 Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8 Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(c)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 10 Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + G$

## (d) Table B4 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule B2 - Table B4 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands	1	A	3 A1	4 B	5 C	6 D	7 E	8 F	9 G	10 H		
<b>Revenue By Source</b>												
Property rates	2								-	-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges									-	-		
Service charges - electricity revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - water revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - refuse revenue	2								-	-		
Service charges - other									-	-		
Rental of facilities and equipment									-	-		
Interest earned - external investments									-	-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors									-	-		
Dividends received									-	-		
Fines									-	-		
Licences and permits									-	-		
Agency services									-	-		
Transfers recognised - operating									-	-		
Other revenue	2								-	-		
Gains on disposal of PPE									-	-		
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>												
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>												
Employee related costs									-	-		
Remuneration of councillors									-	-		
Debt impairment									-	-		
Depreciation & asset impairment									-	-		
Finance charges									-	-		
Bulk purchases									-	-		
Other materials									-	-		
Contracted services									-	-		
Transfers and grants									-	-		
Other expenditure									-	-		
Loss on disposal of PPE									-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure</b>												
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>												
Transfers recognised - capital									-	-		
Contributions									-	-		
Contributed assets									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) before taxation</b>												
Taxation									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation</b>												
Attributable to minorities									-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality</b>												
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate									-	-		
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>												

## References

1. Classifications are revenue sources and expenditure type

2. Detail to be provided in Table SB1

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under collection (MFMA section 28(2)(e)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9. G = B + C + D + E + F

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (e) Table B5 Consolidated Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding

Schedule B2 - Table B5 Consolidated Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by vote and funding

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	5 A1	6 B	7 C	8 D	9 E	10 F	11 G	12 H		
<b>Capital expenditure - Vote</b>												
<b>Multi-year expenditure to be adjusted</b>	2											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single-year expenditure to be adjusted</b>	2											
Example 1 - Vote1									-	-		
Example 2 - Vote2									-	-		
Example 3 - Vote3									-	-		
Example 4 - Vote4									-	-		
Example 5 - Vote5									-	-		
Example 6 - Vote6									-	-		
Example 7 - Vote7									-	-		
Example 8 - Vote8									-	-		
Example 9 - Vote9									-	-		
Example 10 - Vote10									-	-		
Example 11 - Vote11									-	-		
Example 12 - Vote12									-	-		
Example 13 - Vote13									-	-		
Example 14 - Vote14									-	-		
Example 15 - Vote15									-	-		
Capital single-year expenditure sub-total		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Vote</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>												
Governance and administration		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Economic and environmental services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Trading services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>												
National Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provincial Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
District Municipality		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other transfers and grants		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital transfers recognised</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public contributions & donations		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Internally generated funds		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References:**

1. Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3)

2. include capital component of PPP unitary payment. Note that capital transfers are only appropriated to municipalities for the budget year

3. Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the appropriations by vote

4. Must reconcile to supporting table SBT and to Adjustments Budget: Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

5. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

6. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

7. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

8. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

9. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

10. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved: including revenue under collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 23(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

11.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 12. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A/2 \text{ etc}) \times G$

## (f) Table B6 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Position

Schedule B2 - Table B6 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 3	Accum. Funds 4	Multi-year capital 5	Unfore. Unavoid. 6	Nat. or Prov. Govt 7	Other Adjusts. 8	Total Adjusts. 9	Adjusted Budget 10	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>ASSETS</b>												
<b>Current assets</b>												
Cash												
Call investment deposits	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Consumer debtors	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Other debtors												
Current portion of long-term receivables												
Inventory												
<b>Total current assets</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Non current assets</b>												
Long-term receivables												
Investments												
Investment property												
Property, plant and equipment	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Agricultural												
Biological												
Intangible												
Other non-current assets												
<b>Total non current assets</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>LIABILITIES</b>												
<b>Current liabilities</b>												
Bank overdraft												
Borrowing		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Consumer deposits												
Trade and other payables		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Provisions												
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Non current liabilities</b>												
Borrowing	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Provisions	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>												
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Reserves												
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

References

1. Detail to be provided in Table SA3

2. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (g) Table B7 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Cash Flows

Schedule B2 - Table B7 Consolidated Adjustments Budget Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 3	Accum. Funds 4	Multi-year capital 5	Unfore. Unavoid. 6	Nat. or Prov. Govt 7	Other Adjusts. 8	Total Adjusts. 9	Adjusted Budget 10	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R (thousands)		A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Ratepayers and other									--	--		
Government - operating	1								--	--		
Government - capital	1								--	--		
Interest									--	--		
Dividends									--	--		
<b>Payments</b>												
Suppliers and employees									--	--		
Finance charges									--	--		
Transfers and Grants	1								--	--		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Proceeds on disposal of PPE									--	--		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors									--	--		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables									--	--		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments									--	--		
<b>Payments</b>												
Capital assets									--	--		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>												
<b>Receipts</b>												
Short term loans									--	--		
Borrowing long term/financing									--	--		
Increase in consumer deposits									--	--		
<b>Payments</b>												
Repayment of borrowing									--	--		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
<b>NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin	2								--	--		
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	2	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

## References

1. Local/District municipalities to include transfers from/to District/Local Municipalities

2. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note, only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9. G = B + C + D + E + F

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (h) Table B8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Schedule B2 - Table B8 Consolidated Cash backed reserves/accumulated surplus reconciliation

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore. Unavoid.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10			
R thousands		A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		
<b>Cash and investments available</b>												
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other current investments > 90 days		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current assets - Investments	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Cash and investments available:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Applications of cash and investments</b>												
Unspent conditional transfers		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Unspent borrowing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Statutory requirements		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other working capital requirements	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other provisions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Long term investments committed		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Reserves to be backed by cash/investments		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Applications of cash and investments:</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(shortfall):</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1. Must reconcile with the Adjustments Budget Cash Flow and Adjustments Budget Financial Position

2. Council approval for policy required - include sufficient working capital (e.g. allowing for a % of current debtors &gt; 90 days as uncollectable)

3. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

4. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

5. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

6. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29

7. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

8. Adjusts = 'Other' Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

9.  $C = B + C + D + E + F$ 

10. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G



## (i) Table B9 Consolidated Asset Management

Schedule B2 - Table B9 Consolidated Asset Management

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget A	Prior Adjusted 7 A1	Accum. Funds 8 B	Multi-year capital 9 C	Unfore- Unavoid. 10 D	Net or Prov. Govt 11 E	Other Adjusts 12 F	Total Adjusts 13 G	Adjusted Budget 14 H	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
<b>R thousands</b>												
<b>CAPITAL EXPENDITURE</b>												
<b>Total New Assets to be adjusted</b>	1											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>Total Renewal of Existing Assets to be adjusted</b>	2											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>Total Capital Expenditure to be adjusted</b>	4											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
Intangibles												
<b>TOTAL CAPITAL EXPENDITURE to be adjusted</b>	2											
<b>ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
Intangibles												
Agricultural Assets												
Biological assets												
<b>TOTAL ASSET REGISTER SUMMARY - PPE (WDV)</b>	5											
<b>EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS</b>												
<b>Depreciation &amp; asset impairment</b>												
<b>Repairs and Maintenance by asset class</b>	3											
Infrastructure - Road transport												
Infrastructure - Electricity												
Infrastructure - Water												
Infrastructure - Sanitation												
Infrastructure - Other												
Community												
Heritage assets												
Investment properties												
Other assets												
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURE OTHER ITEMS to be adjusted</b>	6											
<b>% of capital exp on renewal of assets</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal of existing assets as % of deprecn</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
<b>Renewal and R&amp;M as a % of PPE</b>		0.0%	0.0%							0.0%	0.0%	0.0%

**References**

1. Detail of new assets provided in Table SA18a
2. Detail of renewal of existing assets provided in Table SA18b
3. Detail of Repairs and Maintenance by Asset Class provided in Table SA18c
4. Must reconcile to total capital expenditure on Budgeted Capital Expenditure
5. Must reconcile to Adjustments Budget Financial Position (written down value)
6. Donated/contributed and assets funded by finance leases to be allocated to the respective category
7. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
8. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspent funds (MFMA section 18(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note: only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)
9. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31
10. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 29
11. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government
12. Adjusts = "Other" Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)); additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)); projected savings (section 28(2)(d)); error correction (section 28(2)(f))
13. G = B + C + D + E + F
14. Adjusted Budget H = (A or A1/2 etc) + G

## (j) Table B10 Consolidated basic service delivery measurement

Schedule B2 - Table B10 Consolidated Basic service delivery measurement

Description	Ref	Budget Year									Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Accum. Funds	Multi-year capital	Unfore- Unavaild.	Nat. or Prov. Govt	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	7 A1	8 B	9 C	10 D	11 E	12 F	13 G	14 H		
<b>Household service targets (R30)</b>	1											
<b>Water:</b>												
Piped water inside dwelling												
Piped water inside yard (but not in dwelling)												
Using public tap (at least min. service level)	2											
Other water supply (at least min. service level)												
<b>Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total</b>												
Using public tap (< min. service level)	3											
Other water supply (< min. service level)	3.4											
No water supply												
<b>Below Minimum Service Level sub-total</b>												
<b>Total number of households</b>	5											
<b>Sanitation/sewerage:</b>												
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage)												
Flush toilet (with septic tank)												
Chemical toilet												
Pit latrine (ventilated or not)												
Other toilet provisions: list type separately												
<b>Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total</b>												
Bucket latrine												
Other toilet provisions (list, < min. service level)												
No toilet provisions												
<b>Below Minimum Service Level sub-total</b>												
<b>Total number of households</b>	5											
<b>Energy:</b>												
Electricity (at least minimum service level)												
Electricity - prepaid (min. service level)												
<b>Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total</b>												
Electricity (< min. service level)												
Electricity - prepaid (< min. service level)												
Other energy sources												
<b>Below Minimum Service Level sub-total</b>												
<b>Total number of households</b>	5											
<b>Refuse:</b>												
Removed at least once a week (min. service)												
<b>Minimum Service Level and Above sub-total</b>												
Removed less frequently than once a week												
Using communal refuse dump												
Using own refuse dump												
Other rubbish disposal												
No rubbish disposal												
<b>Below Minimum Service Level sub-total</b>												
<b>Total number of households</b>	5											
<b>Households receiving Free Basic Service</b>	15											
Water (6 kilolitre per household per month)												
Sanitation (free minimum level service)												
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)												
Refuse (removed at least once a week)												
<b>Cost of Free Basic Services provided (R'300)</b>	16											
Water (6 kilolitre per household per month)												
Sanitation (free sanitation services)												
Electricity/other energy (50kwh per household per month)												
Refuse (removed once a week)												
<b>Total cost of FBS provided (minimum social package)</b>												
<b>Highest level of free service provided</b>												
Property rates (R'600 value threshold)												
Water (kilolitre per household per month)												
Sanitation (kilolitre per household per month)												
Sanitation (Rand per household per month)												
Electricity (kw per household per month)												
Refuse (average litres per week)												
<b>Revenue cost of free services provided (R'300)</b>	17											
Property rates (R15 000 threshold rebate)												
Property rates (other exemptions, reductions and rebates)												
Water												
Sanitation												
Electricity/other energy												
Refuse												
Municipal housing - rental rebates												
Housing - top structure subsidies												
Other												
<b>Total revenue cost of free services provided (total social p</b>												

**Reference:**

1. Include services provided by another entity, e.g. Eskom

2. Stand distance &gt; 200m from dwelling

3. Stand distance &lt;= 200m from dwelling

4. Borehole, spring, rain-water tank etc

5. Must agree to total number of households in municipal area

6. Include value of subsidy provided by municipality above provincial subsidy level

7. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

8. Additional cash-backed accumulated funds/unspeared funds (MFMA section 28(1)(b) and section 28(2)(e)) identified after the Original Budget approved and after annual financial statements audited (note only where underspending could not reasonably have been foreseen)

9. Increases of funds approved under MFMA section 31

10. Adjustments approved in accordance with MFMA section 25

11. Adjustments to transfers from National or Provincial Government

12. Adjusts = 'Other Adjustments proposed to be approved, including revenue under-collection (MFMA section 28(2)(a)), additional revenue appropriation on existing programmes (section 28(2)(b)), projected savings (section 28(2)(d)), error correction (section 28(2)(f))

13.  $G = B + C + D + E + F$ 14. Adjusted Budget  $H = (A \text{ or } A/2 \text{ etc}) + G$ 

15. Show number of households receiving at least these levels of services completely free

16. Must reflect the cost to the municipality of providing the Free Basic Service

17. Reflect the cost to the municipality in terms of 'Revenue foregone' of providing free services (note this will not equal 'Revenue foregone' on SA1)

## **SCHEDULE C – FIRST ATTACHMENT**

(a) **Table C1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

**Schedule C1 - Table C1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

[illegible]

## (b) Table C2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)

Schedule C1 - Table C2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1									
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>										
<i>Governance and administration</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Community and public safety</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Economic and environmental services</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Trading services</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<i>Governance and administration</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Community and public safety</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Economic and environmental services</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Trading services</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes

2. Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in the Financial Performance Statement

3. Total Expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to total operating expenditure shown in 'Financial Performance Statement'

4. All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abattoirs, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification

## (c) Table C3 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule C1 - Table C3 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Vote Description  [Insert departmental structure etc 3.]	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>Revenue by Vote</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure by Vote</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Insert 'Vote'; e.g. Department, if different to standard classification structure

2. Must reconcile to Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance Statement (standard classification)

## (d) Table C4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule C1 - Table C4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Table 3: Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (Revenue and Expenditure)										
Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands										
<b>Revenue By Source</b>										
Property rates								-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges								-		
Service charges - electricity revenue								-		
Service charges - water revenue								-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue								-		
Service charges - refuse revenue								-		
Service charges - other								-		
Rental of facilities and equipment								-		
Interest earned - external investments								-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors								-		
Dividends received								-		
Fines								-		
Licences and permits								-		
Agency services								-		
Transfers recognised - operational								-		
Other revenue								-		
Gains on disposal of PPE								-		
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>										
Employee related costs								-		
Remuneration of councillors								-		
Debt impairment								-		
Depreciation & asset impairment								-		
Finance charges								-		
Bulk purchases								-		
Other materials								-		
Contracted services								-		
Transfers and grants								-		
Other expenditure								-		
Loss on disposal of PPE								-		
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>										
Transfers recognised - capital		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Contributions recognised - capital										
Contributed assets										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Taxation								-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Attributable to minorities										
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate										
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-

References

1. Material variances to be explained on Table SC1

## (e) Table C5 Monthly Budget Statement – Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)

Schedule C1 - Table C5 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)

Vote Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1									
<b>Multi-Year expenditure appropriation</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Multi-year expenditure</b>	4,7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single Year expenditure appropriation</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital single-year expenditure</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard Classification</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard Classification</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provincial Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
District Municipality		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other transfers and grants		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Transfers recognised - capital</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Public contributions &amp; donations</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Borrowing</b>	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Internally generated funds</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References

1 Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3)

2 Include capital component of PPP unitary payment

3 Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the total of multi-year and single year appropriations

4 Include expenditure on investment property, intangible and biological assets

5 Must reconcile to Monthly Budget Statement Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

6 Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment - total borrowing payments to reconcile to changes in Table SA17



## (f) Table C6 Monthly Budget Statement – Financial Position

Schedule C1 - Table C6 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year - 1	Budget Year			
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	YearTD actual	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1					
<b>ASSETS</b>						
<b>Current assets</b>						
Cash						
Call investment deposits						
Consumer debtors						
Other debtors						
Current portion of long-term receivables						
Inventory						
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>						
Long-term receivables						
Investments						
investment property						
Property, plant and equipment						
Agricultural						
Biological assets						
Intangible assets						
Other non-current assets						
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>						
<b>Current liabilities</b>						
Bank overdraft						
Borrowing						
Consumer deposits						
Trade and other payables						
Provisions						
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>						
Borrowing						
Provisions						
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>						
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)						
Reserves						
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Material variances to be explained in Table SC1

2. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

## (g) Table C7 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

Schedule C1 - Table C7 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1									
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>										
Receipts										
Ratepayers and other								-		
Government - operating								-		
Government - capital								-		
Interest								-		
Dividends								-		
Payments										
Suppliers and employees								-		
Finance charges								-		
Transfers and Grants								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>										
Receipts										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors								-		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments								-		
Payments										
Capital assets								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>										
Receipts										
Short term loans								-		
Borrowing long term/refinancing								-		
Increase in consumer deposits								-		
Payments										
Repayment of borrowing								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Cash/cash equivalents at beginning:								-		-
Cash/cash equivalents at month/year end:		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-

References

1. Material variances to be explained in Table SC1

## **SCHEDULE C – SECOND ATTACHMENT**

**(a) Table C1 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

**Schedule C2 - Table C1 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

[illegible]

(b) Table C2 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance  
(standard classification)

Schedule C2 - Table C2 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (standard classification)

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1									
<b>Revenue - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other	4									
<b>Total Revenue - Standard</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Expenditure - Standard</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Executive and council										
Budget and treasury office										
Corporate services										
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Community and social services										
Sport and recreation										
Public safety										
Housing										
Health										
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Planning and development										
Road transport										
Environmental protection										
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Electricity										
Water										
Waste water management										
Waste management										
Other										
<b>Total Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>										

## References

1. Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
2. Total Revenue by standard classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in the Financial Performance Statement
3. Total Expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to total operating expenditure shown in 'Financial Performance Statement'
4. All amounts must be classified under a standard classification (modified GFS). The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abattoirs, Air Transport, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification

(c) Table C3 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance  
(revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Schedule C2 - Table C3 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by municipal vote)

Vote Description  [insert departmental structure etc 3.]	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>Revenue by Vote</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Revenue by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure by Vote</b>	1									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Expenditure by Vote</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Insert "Vote"; e.g. Department, if different to standard classification structure

2. Must reconcile to Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance Statement (standard classification)

## (d) Table C4 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule C2 - Table C4 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							Full Year Forecast
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	
R thousands										
Revenue By Source										
Property rates								-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges								-		
Service charges - electricity revenue								-		
Service charges - water revenue								-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue								-		
Service charges - refuse revenue								-		
Service charges - other								-		
Rental of facilities and equipment								-		
Interest earned - external investments								-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors								-		
Dividends received								-		
Fines								-		
Licences and permits								-		
Agency services								-		
Transfers recognised - operational								-		
Other revenue								-		
Gains on disposal of PPE								-		
Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Expenditure By Type										
Employee related costs								-		
Remuneration of councillors								-		
Debt impairment								-		
Depreciation & asset impairment								-		
Finance charges								-		
Bulk purchases								-		
Other materials								-		
Contracted services								-		
Transfers and grants								-		
Other expenditure								-		
Loss on disposal of PPE								-		
Total Expenditure		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Surplus/(Deficit)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Transfers recognised - capital								-		
Contributions recognised - capital								-		
Contributed assets								-		
Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers & contributions		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Taxation								-		
Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Attributable to minorities								-		
Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate								-		
Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-

References

1. Material variances to be explained on Table SC1

## (e) Table C5 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement – Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)

Schedule C2 - Table C5 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure (municipal vote, standard classification and funding)

Vote Description	Ref	Budget Year .1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1									
<b>Multi-Year expenditure appropriation</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Multi-year expenditure</b>	4,7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single Year expenditure appropriation</b>	2									
Example 1 - Vote1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 2 - Vote2		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 3 - Vote3		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 4 - Vote4		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 5 - Vote5		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 6 - Vote6		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 7 - Vote7		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 8 - Vote8		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 9 - Vote9		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 10 - Vote10		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 11 - Vote11		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 12 - Vote12		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 13 - Vote13		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 14 - Vote14		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Example 15 - Vote15		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital single-year expenditure</b>	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard Classification</b>										
<b>Governance and administration</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Budget and treasury office		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Corporate services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Community and public safety</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Economic and environmental services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Planning and development		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Trading services</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Electricity		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard Classification</b>	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provincial Government		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
District Municipality		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other transfers and grants		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Transfers recognised - capital</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Public contributions &amp; donations</b>	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Borrowing</b>	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Internally generated funds</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

## References:

1. Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3)
2. Include capital component of PPP unitary payment
3. Capital expenditure by standard classification must reconcile to the total of multi-year and single year appropriations
4. Include expenditure on investment property, intangible and biological assets
5. Must reconcile to Monthly Budget Statement Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
6. Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment - total borrowing/repayments to reconcile to changes in Table SA17



## (f) Table C6 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position

Schedule C2 - Table C6 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year - 1	Budget Year			
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	YearTD actual	Full Year Forecast
R thousands	1					
<b>ASSETS</b>						
<b>Current assets</b>						
Cash						
Call investment deposits						
Consumer debtors						
Other debtors						
Current portion of long-term receivables						
Inventory						
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>						
Long-term receivables						
Investments						
investment property						
Property, plant and equipment						
Agricultural						
Biological assets						
Intangible assets						
Other non-current assets						
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>						
<b>Current liabilities</b>						
Bank overdraft						
Borrowing						
Consumer deposits						
Trade and other payables						
Provisions						
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>						
Borrowing						
Provisions						
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>						
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)						
Reserves						
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Material variances to be explained in Table SC1

2. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

**(g) Table C7 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow**

Schedule C2 - Table C7 Consolidated Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flow

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
<b>R thousands</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Ratepayers and other								-		
Government - operating								-		
Government - capital								-		
Interest								-		
Dividends								-		
<b>Payments</b>										
Suppliers and employees								-		
Finance charges								-		
Transfers and Grants								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors								-		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments								-		
<b>Payments</b>										
Capital assets								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Short term loans								-		
Borrowing long term/refinancing								-		
Increase in consumer deposits								-		
<b>Payments</b>										
Repayment of borrowing								-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Cash/cash equivalents at beginning:								-		-
Cash/cash equivalents at month/year end:		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-

**References**

1. Material variances to be explained in Table SC1

## **SCHEDULE D – ATTACHMENT**

(a) **Table D1 Budget Summary**

**Schedule D Table D1 Budget Summary**[illegible]

**Schedule D Table D2 Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)**

4. Previously described as 'bad or doubtful debts' - amounts shown should reflect the change in the provision for debt impairment

## (c) Table D3 Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding

Schedule D Table D3 Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding

Vote Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousands</b>	<b>1</b>									
<b>Multi-Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert programme/projects description</i>										
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>	<b>2</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert single year budgets and indicative estimates</i>										
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>	<b>2</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>	<b>4</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government										
Provincial Government										
Parent Municipality										
District Municipality										
Transfers recognised - capital		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public contributions & donations	5									
Borrowing	3									
Internally generated funds										
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>	<b>4</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Municipalities may choose to appropriate for capital expenditure for three years or for one year (if one year appropriation projected expenditure required for yr2 and yr3)
2. Include capital component of PPP unitary payment.
3. Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment
4. Total Capital Funding must balance with Total Capital Expenditure
5. Include contributions from Public Entities: e.g. Eskom

## (d) Table D4 Budgeted Financial Position

Schedule D Table D4 Budgeted Financial Position

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>ASSETS</b>										
<b>Current assets</b>										
Cash										
Call investment deposits										
Consumer debtors										
Other debtors										
Current portion of long-term receivables										
Inventory										
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>										
Long-term receivables	3									
Investments										
Investment property										
Property, plant and equipment	1									
Agricultural assets										
Biological assets										
Intangible assets										
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>										
<b>Current liabilities</b>										
Bank overdraft										
Borrowing										
Consumer deposits										
Trade and other payables										
Provisions	3									
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>										
Borrowing										
Provisions	3									
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>										
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)										
Reserves										
Share capital										
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Include 'Construction-work-in-progress' (disclosed separately in annual financial statements)
2. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity
3. Include deferred tax and tax provisions

## (e) Table D5 Budgeted Cash Flows

Schedule D Table D5 Budgeted Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Current Year - 3	Current Year - 2	Current Year - 1	Current Year			Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year	Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Ratepayers and other										
Government - operating										
Government - capital										
Interest										
Dividends										
<b>Payments</b>	2									
Suppliers and employees										
Finance charges										
Dividends paid										
Transfers and Grants										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE										
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors										
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables										
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments										
<b>Payments</b>										
Capital assets										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>										
<b>Receipts</b>										
Short term loans										
Borrowing long term/financing										
Increase in consumer deposits										
<b>Payments</b>										
Repayment of borrowing										
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin.	2									
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. The end balance of Cash/cash equivalents must reconcile to detail in Table SD6

2. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less



## **SCHEDULE E – ATTACHMENT**

## (a) Table E1 Adjustments Budget Summary

Schedule E - Table E1 Adjustments Budget Summary

Description	Budget Year								Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
	Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Downward adjusts	Parent munl.	Unfore. Unavoid.	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
	A	1 A1	2 B	3 C	4 D	5 E	6 F	7 G		
<b>Financial Performance</b>										
Property rates							-	-		
Service charges							-	-		
Investment revenue							-	-		
Transfers recognised - operational							-	-		
Other own revenue							-	-		
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Employee costs							-	-		
Remuneration of Board Members							-	-		
Depreciation and debt impairment							-	-		
Finance charges							-	-		
Materials and bulk purchases							-	-		
Transfers and grants							-	-		
Other expenditure							-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers recognised - capital							-	-		
Contributions recognised - capital & contributed assets							-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers &amp; contributions</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Taxation							-	-		
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Capital expenditure &amp; funds sources</b>										
<b>Capital expenditure</b>							-	-		
Transfers recognised - capital							-	-		
Public contributions & donations							-	-		
Borrowing							-	-		
Internally generated funds							-	-		
<b>Total sources of capital funds</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Financial position</b>										
Total current assets							-	-		
Total non current assets							-	-		
Total current liabilities							-	-		
Total non current liabilities							-	-		
Community wealth/Equity							-	-		
<b>Cash flows</b>										
Net cash from (used) operating							-	-		
Net cash from (used) investing							-	-		
Net cash from (used) financing							-	-		
<b>Cash/cash equivalents at the year end</b>							-	-		

**References**

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget
2. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6a)
3. Expenditure of additional allocations from the Parent Municipality in accordance with MFMA section 87(5b)
4. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6c)
5. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6d)
6.  $F = B + C + D + E$
7. Adjusted Budget  $G = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + F$

## (b) Table E2 Adjustments Budget - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule E - Table E2 Adjustments Budget - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	Ref	Budget Year								Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Downward adjusta	Parent muni.	Unfore. Unavoid.	Other Adjusts	Total Adjusts	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
		A	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		
<b>R thousands</b>											
<b>Revenue By Source</b>											
Property rates								-	-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges								-	-		
Service charges - electricity revenue								-	-		
Service charges - water revenue								-	-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue								-	-		
Service charges - refuse revenue								-	-		
Service charges - other								-	-		
Rental of facilities and equipment								-	-		
Interest earned - external investments								-	-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors								-	-		
Dividends received								-	-		
Fines								-	-		
Licences and permits								-	-		
Agency services								-	-		
Transfers recognised - operational								-	-		
Other revenue								-	-		
Gains on disposal of PPE								-	-		
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>											
Employee related costs								-	-		
Remuneration of board members								-	-		
Debt impairment								-	-		
Collection costs								-	-		
Depreciation & asset impairment								-	-		
Finance charges								-	-		
Bulk purchases								-	-		
Other materials								-	-		
Contracted services								-	-		
Transfers and grants								-	-		
Other expenditure								-	-		
Loss on disposal of PPE								-	-		
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Surplus/(Deficit)</b>											
Transfers recognised - capital								-	-		
Contributions recognised - capital								-	-		
Contributions of PPE								-	-		
<b>Surplus/(Deficit) before taxation</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Taxation											
<b>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>References</b>											
1. Revenue includes sales of: (insert description)											
2. Bulk purchases - electricity											
2. Bulk purchases - water											
3. Expenditure includes repairs & maintenance of:											

**References**

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

2. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6a)

3. Expenditure of additional allocations from the Parent Municipality in accordance with MFMA section 87(6b)

4. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6c)

5. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6d)

6.  $F = B + C + D + E$ 7. Adjusted Budget  $G = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + F$

## (c) Table E3 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding

Schedule E - Table E3 Adjustments Capital Expenditure Budget by programme and funding

Description	Ref	Budget Year							Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Downward adjusts	Parent muni.	Unfore. Unavoid.	Other Adjusts	Total Adjusts	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	1 A1	2 B	3 C	4 D	5 E	6 F	7 G	
<b>Multi-Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert programme/projects description</i>								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Single Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert single year budgets and indicative estimates</i>								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
								-	-	
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Capital expenditure</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government								-	-	
Provincial Government								-	-	
Parent Municipality								-	-	
District Municipality								-	-	
Transfers recognised - capital		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public contributions & donations								-	-	
Borrowing								-	-	
Internally generated funds								-	-	
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget!

2. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6a)

3. Expenditure of additional allocations from the Parent Municipality in accordance with MFMA section 87(6b)

4. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6c)

5. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6d)

6.  $F = B + C + D + E$ 7. Adjusted Budget  $G = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + F$

## (d) Table E4 Adjustments Budget - Financial Position

Schedule E - Table E4 Adjustments Budget - Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year								Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted 1	Downward adjusts 2	Parent muni. 3	Unfore. Unavoid. 4	Other Adjusts. 5	Total Adjusts. 6	Adjusted Budget 7	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	A1	B	C	D	E	F	G		
<b>ASSETS</b>											
Current assets											
Cash	1							-	-		
Call investment deposits	1							-	-		
Consumer debtors								-	-		
Other debtors								-	-		
Current portion of long-term receivables								-	-		
Inventory								-	-		
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current assets											
Long-term receivables								-	-		
Investments								-	-		
Investment property								-	-		
Property, plant and equipment								-	-		
Agricultural assets								-	-		
Biological assets								-	-		
Intangible assets								-	-		
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>											
Current liabilities											
Bank overdraft	1							-	-		
Borrowing								-	-		
Consumer deposits								-	-		
Trade and other payables								-	-		
Provisions								-	-		
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Non current liabilities											
Borrowing								-	-		
Provisions								-	-		
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>											
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)								-	-		
Reserves								-	-		
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget

2. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6a)

3. Expenditure of additional allocations from the Parent Municipality in accordance with MFMA section 87(6b)

4. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6c)

5. Revisions approved in accordance approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6d)

6.  $F = B + C + D + E$ 7. Adjusted Budget  $G = (A \text{ or } A12 \text{ etc}) + F$

## (e) Table E5 Adjustments Budget - Cash Flows

Schedule E - Table E5 Adjustments Budget - Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Budget Year								Budget Year + 1	Budget Year + 2
		Original Budget	Prior Adjusted	Downward adjusts	Parent muni.	Unfore. Unavoid.	Other Adjusts.	Total Adjusts.	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget
R thousands		A	1 A1	2 B	3 C	4 D	5 E	6 F	7 G		
<b>CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>											
<b>Receipts</b>											
Ratepayers and other								-	-		
Government - operating								-	-		
Government - capital								-	-		
Interest								-	-		
Dividends								-	-		
<b>Payments</b>											
Suppliers and employees								-	-		
Finance charges								-	-		
Dividends paid								-	-		
Transfers and Grants								-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>											
<b>Receipts</b>											
Proceeds on disposal of PPE								-	-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors								-	-		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables								-	-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments								-	-		
<b>Payments</b>											
Capital assets								-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>											
<b>Receipts</b>											
Short term loans								-	-		
Borrowing long term/refinancing								-	-		
Increase in consumer deposits								-	-		
<b>Payments</b>											
Repayment of borrowing								-	-		
<b>NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET INCREASE/(DECREASE) IN CASH HELD</b>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**References**

1. Only complete if a previous adjusted budget has been approved in the same financial year. Add an additional column for each previously approved Adjustments Budget.
2. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6a).
3. Expenditure of additional allocations from the Parent Municipality in accordance with MFMA section 87(6b).
4. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6c).
5. Revisions approved in accordance with MFMA section 87(6d).
6.  $F = B + C + D + E$
7. Adjusted Budget  $G = (A \text{ or } A1/2 \text{ etc}) + F$
8. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less.

## **SCHEDULE F – ATTACHMENT**

(a) **Table F1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

**Schedule F - Table F1 Monthly Budget Statement Summary**

[illegible]



## (b) Table F2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Schedule F - Table F2 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description		Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
			Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
R thousands											
Revenue By Source		1									
Property rates									-		
Property rates - penalties & collection charges									-		
Service charges - electricity revenue									-		
Service charges - water revenue									-		
Service charges - sanitation revenue									-		
Service charges - refuse revenue									-		
Service charges - other									-		
Rental of facilities and equipment									-		
Interest earned - external investments									-		
Interest earned - outstanding debtors									-		
Dividends received									-		
Fines									-		
Licences and permits									-		
Agency services									-		
Transfers recognised - operational									-		
Other revenue									-		
Gains on disposal of PPE									-		
Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)			-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Expenditure By Type		2									
Employee related costs									-		
Remuneration of Directors									-		
Debt impairment									-		
Collection costs									-		
Depreciation & asset impairment									-		
Finance charges									-		
Bulk purchases									-		
Other materials									-		
Contracted services									-		
Transfers and grants									-		
Other expenditure									-		
Loss on disposal of PPE									-		
Total Expenditure			-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Surplus/(Deficit)			-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Transfers recognised - capital									-		
Contributions recognised - capital									-		
Contributions of PPE									-		
Surplus/(Deficit) before taxation			-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Taxation									-		
Surplus/(Deficit) for the year			-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
References											
1. Revenue includes sales of: (insert description)											
2. Bulk purchases - electricity											
2. Bulk purchases - water											
3. Expenditure includes repairs & maintenance of:											

4. List operating expenditure on allocations as a note (MFMA section 87(1)(f)).

5. Material variances to be explained in Table SF1 (materiality to be defined by the parent municipality).

## (c) Table F3 Monthly Budget Statement – Capital Expenditure

Schedule F - Table F3 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure

Schedule 1 - Table 7.5 Monthly Budget Statement - Capital Expenditure										
Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	Full Year Forecast
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>Multi-Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert programme/projects description</i>								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
<b>Capital multi-year expenditure sub-total</b>			-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Single Year expenditure</b>										
<i>Insert single year budgets and indicative estimates</i>								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
								-		
<b>Capital single-year expenditure sub-total</b>			-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Total Capital expenditure</b>	4, 5		-	-	-	-	-	-		-
<b>Funded by:</b>										
National Government								-		
Provincial Government								-		
Parent Municipality								-		
District Municipality								-		
Transfers recognised - capital			-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Public contributions & Donations								-		
Borrowing	1							-		
Internally generated funds								-		
<b>Total Capital Funding</b>			-	-	-	-	-	-		-

**References**

1. Include finance leases and PPP capital funding component of unitary payment

2. List capital expenditure on allocations as a note (MFMA section 67)

## (d) Table F4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position

Schedule F - Table F4 Monthly Budget Statement - Financial Position

Description	Ref	Budget Year - 1	Budget Year			
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	YearTD actual	Full Year Forecast
<b>R thousands</b>						
<b>ASSETS</b>						
<b>Current assets</b>						
Cash						
Call investment deposits						
Consumer debtors						
Other debtors						
Current portion of long-term receivables						
Inventory						
<b>Total current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current assets</b>						
Long-term receivables						
Investments						
Investment property						
Property, plant and equipment						
Agricultural assets						
Biological assets						
Intangible assets						
<b>Total non current assets</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>LIABILITIES</b>						
<b>Current liabilities</b>						
Bank overdraft						
Borrowing						
Consumer deposits						
Trade and other payables						
Provisions						
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>Non current liabilities</b>						
Borrowing						
Provisions						
<b>Total non current liabilities</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>		-	-	-	-	-
<b>NET ASSETS</b>	1	-	-	-	-	-
<b>COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>						
Accumulated Surplus/(Deficit)						
Reserves						
Share capital						
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY WEALTH/EQUITY</b>	1	-	-	-	-	-

References

1. Net assets must balance with Total Community Wealth/Equity

## (e) Table E5 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flows

Schedule F - Table F5 Monthly Budget Statement - Cash Flows

Description	Ref	Budget Year -1	Budget Year							Full Year Forecast
		Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Monthly actual	YearTD actual	YearTD budget	YTD variance	YTD variance %	
R thousands										
CASH FLOW FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES										
Receipts										
Ratepayers and other								-		
Government - operating								-		
Government - capital								-		
Interest								-		
Dividends								-		
Payments										
Suppliers and employees								-		
Finance charges								-		
Dividends paid								-		
Transfers and Grants								-		
NET CASH FROM/(USED) OPERATING ACTIVITIES		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES										
Receipts										
Proceeds on disposal of PPE								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current debtors								-		
Decrease (increase) other non-current receivables								-		
Decrease (increase) in non-current investments								-		
Payments										
Capital assets								-		
NET CASH FROM/(USED) INVESTING ACTIVITIES		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES										
Receipts										
Short term loans								-		
Borrowing long term/refinancing								-		
Increase in consumer deposits								-		
Payments										
Repayment of borrowing								-		
NET CASH FROM/(USED) FINANCING ACTIVITIES		-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
NET INCREASE/ (DECREASE) IN CASH HELD										
Cash/cash equivalents at the year begin:	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end:	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-

**References**

1. List as a note the details of any operational allocations received (MFMA section 87(11)(e))
2. Cash equivalents includes investments with maturities of 3 months or less